

**Duplex ultrasound assessment of early-stage  
peripheral artery disease in the lower limbs of  
Zimbabwean diabetic patients.**

**Josephine. S. Tityiwe**

**PhD Thesis**

**2020**

**Duplex ultrasound assessment of early-stage peripheral  
artery disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic  
patients.**

**Josephine. S. Tityiwe**

**Diagnostic Imaging Centre for Health Sciences**

**University of Salford**

**Greater Manchester, UK**

**Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements of the  
degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Diagnostic Imaging,  
October 2020**

## Table of Contents

<b>Cover page.....</b>	<b>i</b>
Title page .....	ii
Contents page .....	iii
<b>List of appendices .....</b>	<b>ix</b>
List of tables .....	xi
List of figures .....	xii
List of equations.....	xiii
<b>Acknowledgements.....</b>	<b>xiv</b>
Dedication .....	xvi
Declaration .....	xvii
Abbreviations.....	XViii
<b>Thesis Abstract .....</b>	<b>xix</b>
<b>Chapter 1-Thesis Introduction .....</b>	<b>20</b>
1.1 What is diabetes.....	20
1.1.1 Clinical management of diabetes.....	22
1.1.2 Aetiology of PAD in diabetes.....	24
1.1.3 Classification of PAD.....	27
1.1.4 Beetroot juice and therapeutic management of PAD.....	29
<b>1.2 Thesis Rationale .....</b>	<b>33</b>

1.2.1 Background information.....	37
1.3 Thesis aims and research questions.....	42
<b>Chapter 2-Literature review .....</b>	<b>44</b>
2.1 introduction .....	44
2.1.1 Methods of diagnosing PAD.....	45
2.1.2 Treadmill testing and six-minute walk in diagnosing PAD.....	46
2.1.3 Ankle Brachial Index in diagnosing PAD.....	47
2.1.4 Colour Duplex ultrasound in diagnosing PAD.....	48
2.2 The ultrasound parameters.....	51
2.2.1 Peak systolic velocity.....	52
2.2.2 Pulsatility Index.....	54
2.2.3 Vessel diameter inner to inner.....	55
2.2.4 Resistive Index.....	56
<b>2.3 Contribution to knowledge .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Chapter 3- Thesis Methodology .....</b>	<b>57</b>
3.1 Thesis Methodology flow diagram .....	57
3.2 Overview of experimental research investigations .....	60
3.3 Thesis experimental design.....	61
3.4 Thesis inclusion and exclusion criteria.....	63
3.5 Thesis recruitment strategy.....	66
3.6 Thesis participants preparation.....	67



3.7 Body Mass Index and Ankle Brachial Index measurements.....	69
3.8 Duplex ultrasound parameters measurements.....	71
3.9 Minimisation of bias and error.....	79
3.10 Internal and external validity.....	80
<b>Chapter 4- First investigation.....</b>	<b>81</b>
Abstract.....	81
4.1 Introduction .....	82
4.2 Aims.....	83
4.2.1 Research questions.....	83
4.3 Methodology.....	84
4.3.1 Design.....	84
4.3.2. Participants.....	84
4.4 Data collection procedures.....	85
4.4.1 Reactive hyperaemic testing.....	85
4.4.2 Blood tests for glycaemic control and renal function.....	86
4.4.3 Doppler ultrasound parameters.....	87
4.4.4 Decision making during data collection.....	89
4.5 Statistical analysis.....	91
4.6 Results.....	93
4.6.1 Demographic findings.....	93

4.6.2 The Popliteal artery findings.....	94
4.6.3 The Anterior tibial artery findings.....	97
4.6.4 The posterior tibial artery findings.....	100
4.7 Discussion.....	103
4.8 Strengths and limitations.....	105
4.9 Conclusions and recommendations.....	106
4.10 Implications.....	107
4.11 Decision making for the second investigation.....	107
<b>Chapter 5-Second investigation .....</b>	<b>108</b>
Abstract.....	108
5.1 Introduction .....	109
5.2 Aims.....	110
5.2.1 Research questions.....	111
5.3 Methodology.....	111
5.3.1 Design.....	111
5.3.2 Population.....	112
5.3.3 Sampling.....	112
5.3.4 Participants.....	113
5.4 Data collection procedures.....	115
5.4.1 Recruitment plan.....	115

5.4.2 Duplex ultrasound parameters measurements.....	116
5.5 Statistical analysis.....	117
5.6 Results.....	118
5.6.1 Demographic findings.....	118
5.6.2 Confounding variable.....	120
5.6.3 Popliteal artery findings.....	121
5.6.4 Anterior Tibial Artery findings.....	122
5.6.5 Posterior Tibial Artery findings.....	124
5.7 Discussion.....	126
5.7.1 Duplex ultrasound parameters.....	126
5.7.2 Ankle Brachial Index measurements.....	129
5.7.3 Confounding variable.....	130
5.7.4 Strengths and Limitations.....	130
5.7.5 Internal and external validity.....	130
5.8 Conclusions.....	131
5.9 Decision making.....	132
5.10 Recommendations.....	132
<b>Chapter 6- Third investigation .....</b>	<b>134</b>
Abstract.....	134
6.1 Introduction .....	135

6.2 Aim.....	138
6.2.1 Research questions.....	139
6.3 Methodology.....	139
6.3.1 Design.....	139
6.3.2 Population and sampling.....	140
6.3.3 Participants.....	140
6.4 Data collection procedures.....	141
6.4.1 Body Mass Index measurements.....	141
6.4.2 Duplex ultrasound and blood pressure measurements.....	141
6.5 Statistical analysis.....	143
6.6 Results.....	145
6.6.1 Demographic Findings.....	145
6.6.2 Combined group changes Peak systolic velocity.....	145
6.6.3 Comparisons between groups peak systolic velocity.....	147
6.6.4 Comparison within groups peak systolic velocity.....	149
6.6.5 Combined groups change systolic blood pressure.....	151
6.6.6 Comparison between groups systolic blood pressure.....	152
6.6.7 Comparison within groups systolic blood pressure.....	153
6.6.8 Combined groups change diastolic blood pressure.....	156
6.6.9 Comparison between groups diastolic blood pressure.....	157

6.6.10 Comparison within groups diastolic blood pressure.....	158
6.7 Discussion.....	160
6.8 Strengths and Limitations.....	164
6.9 Internal and external validity.....	166
6.10 Conclusions.....	167
6.11 Recommendations.....	167
6.12 Implications.....	167
6.13 Decision making for future research.....	168
<b>Chapter 7- Overall Thesis Discussion.....</b>	<b>169</b>
7.1 Introduction .....	169
7.2 overall thesis findings .....	170
7.3 Overall contribution to knowledge gap.....	172
7.4 Overall thesis conclusions.....	173
7.5 Overall thesis implications.....	174
7.6 Overall thesis recommendations.....	175
7.8 Appendices.....	179
7.9 References.....	244
 <b>List of appendices</b>	
Appendix A: Data collection sheet investigations 1 and 2.....	179
Appendix B: Data collection sheet for both groups (Third investigation.....)	180

Appendix C: Recruiting E-mail.....	181
Appendix D: Q Diabetes risk calculator.....	182
Appendix E1: Urea and Creatinine tests quotation.....	184
Appendix E2: Glycated haemoglobin test quotation.....	185
Appendix E3: Urea and Creatinine preliminary results.....	186
Appendix E4: Glycated haemoglobin preliminary results.....	187
Appendix E5: Health professions registration Excel Laboratory.....	188
Appendix F: First Investigation of raw data.....	189
Appendix G: UK Diabetes risk score.....	190
Appendix Hi): MRCZ consent form investigations 1 and 2.....	192
Appendix H ii): MRCZ Consent form third investigation.....	202
Appendix I: Sonography Principles and Instrumentation certificate.....	212
Appendix J: The Abdomen and Small parts certificate.....	213
Appendix K: Obstetrics and Gynaecology certificate.....	214
Appendix L: Diagnostic Radiography registration certificate.....	215
Appendix M: Mpilo Hospital permission letter.....	216
Appendix N 1: Ultrasound practising certificate (Zimbabwe).....	217
Appendix N 2 Ultrasound registration certificate (Zimbabwe).....	218
Appendix O: MRCZ Ethics Approval letter.....	219
Appendix P: Rutherford et al., (1997) PAD Classification.....	220

Appendix Q1 Company Incorporation for Ultrasound centre.....	221
Appendix Q2 Company incorporation for Wavestream.....	222
Appendix Q3 Health professions registration, Wavestream (PVT) LTD.....	223
Appendix Q4 Tax Clearance Wavestream (PVT) LTD.....	224
Appendix R MRCZ Adverse events summary.....	225
Appendix S1 Salford University Ethics letter.....	226
Appendix S2 Salford University Ethics application form.....	227
Appendix U MRCZ Acknowledgement Letter.....	239
Appendix W1 Brachytherapy phantom.....	242
Appendix W2 Brachytherapy phantom Quality control tests.....	243

## **List of Tables**

Table 1 Health facilities profile in Zimbabwe.....	40
Table 2 Demographics First Investigation.....	94
Table 3a Descriptive statistics and DUS parameters for PA.....	95
Table 3b Descriptive statistics and paired t-tests for PA.....	96
Table 4a Descriptive statistics and DUS parameters for ATA .....	98
Table 4b Descriptive statistics and paired t-test for ATA.....	99
Table 5a Descriptive statistics and DUS parameters for PTA.....	101
Table 5b Descriptive statistics and paired t-test for PTA.....	102
Table 6 Normality testing for demographic data.....	119

Table 7 confounding variable.....	120
Table 8 Descriptive statistics for DUS parameters both groups for PA.....	122
Table 9 Descriptive statistics for DUS parameters both groups for ATA.....	123
Table 10 Descriptive statistics for DUS parameters both groups PTA.....	125
Table 11 PSV comparisons with time.....	146
Table 12 SBP comparisons with time.....	148
Table 13 DBP comparisons with time.....	150
Table 14 Combined group effects SBP.....	151
Table 15 SBP response between groups.....	152
Table 16 SBP response within groups.....	156
Table 17 Combined groups DBP changes after BRJ.....	157
Table 18 Comparison of DBP change between groups at time points.....	158
Table 19 Comparison of DBP changes at specific times within groups.....	160

## **List of Figures**

Figure 1 Administered Beetroot juice sample .....	33
Figure 2 Normal triphasic flow in CFA to PA.....	52
Figure 3 Manual trace for PSV and EDV.....	54
Figure 4 Blood pressure measuring technique.....	71
Figure 5 Measurement of Doppler parameters.....	75
Figure 6 scanning technique for popliteal artery .....	77



Figure 7 Scanning technique for anterior tibial artery.....	77
Figure 8 Lower limb arteries anatomy (CT image).....	78
Figure 9 VDI measurements .....	79
Figure 10 Longitudinal section Dorsalis pedis artery.....	90
Figure 11 Longitudinal section Posterior tibial artery.....	90
Figures 12a and b PSV response to BRJ ingestion diabetics.....	149
Figure 13a and b SBP response to BRJ ingestion in non-diabetics.....	154
Figures 14a and b DBP response to BRJ ingestion by both groups.....	158

### **List of equations**

Equation 1 Pulsatility index formula.....	54
Equation 2 Poiseuille law.....	55
Equation 3 Bernoulli equation.....	56
Equations 4 Resistive index formula.....	56
Equation 5 Body Mass Index formula .....	69
Equation 6 Wave equation.....	72
Equation 7 Doppler equation.....	74
Equation 8 SEM Formula.....	93
Equation 9 SDD Formula.....	93
Equations 10a Sample size justification.....	112

## Acknowledgements

I would like to thank my supervisors, Dr Paul Comfort, Dr Newton-Hughes Ann, Professor Godfrey Azangwe and Dr Gillian Crofts for their unwavering support and advice throughout my PhD journey. There were times when the journey was tough and I almost gave up, but my supervisors were with me all the way, and I feel indebted to them all. I do not forget all the Skype sessions, emails, one on one sessions besides all the counselling and encouragement when I almost felt like giving up.

My gratitude also goes to my examiners, Dr Jane McAdam and Dr Andrew England for the Interim Assessment and Professor Peter Hogg and Dr Anita Williams for the Internal Evaluation Assessment. Your feedback helped me mould and panel beat my PhD in the right direction, thank you very much. I would also want to thank Dr Katy Szczepura and Dr Rita Phillips, my examiners, for the viva examination, your feedback helped me to mould my work again in the right direction.

I would also like to thank Dr Max Patana, Dr Tarisai Kufa and the nursing staff for Mpilo Central Hospital diabetic clinic, thank you very much for allowing me ample time and cooperation during the recruitment and monitoring of participants for this thesis despite your busy schedules. Many thanks to the CEO, Director, Principle Nursing Officer and the ethics board members for Mpilo Central Hospital for allowing me permission to at research their institute.

I do not forget the diabetic patients from Mpilo Central Hospital as well as the non-diabetic participants from the National University of Science and Technology for their willingness to participate in this research work, I do appreciate your patience and effort during the conduct of this research.

I would like to thank Dr D Gandanhamo (Specialist Radiologist) for Diagnostic X-ray centre Bulawayo for the mentorship he offered me during the preliminary development of this thesis ultrasound protocol.

Again I wish to thank the Vice-Chancellor, pro-Vice Chancellors, Dean of Applied Sciences Faculty, The Staff Development department, The Research Board, The Bursars department, The Registrar's department at the National University of Science and Technology, Zimbabwe for allowing me this long study leave, processing and payment of my tuition fees, buying of my research components from South Africa.

Many thanks to the Chairpersons and staff members of the Radiography department formerly Applied Physics department for supporting me during the time of my studies. Thank you all for allowing me a lighter teaching load to enable me time to focus on my studies. Thank you very much for understanding me during these stressful and strenuous times of my PhD Journey.

Last but not least I would like to thank my Husband, Alfonce and children, Abigail, Abel and Ann-Marie. Thank you so much for standing by me and understanding me even during the times when I would leave you behind going to the UK for my studies, Thank you so much Alfonce for supporting me financially during my studies, may God Almighty bless you.

Many thanks to my Mother and my now late father, brothers and sisters, you cheered me on during this tough journey. God almighty bless you.

## **Dedication**

In memory of my father, (Gilbert Chamutsa Muyengwa) who passed away on the 29<sup>th</sup> of September 2016, the time when I was preparing to attend for my Internal Evaluation Examination in the United Kingdom. I remember your words, Daddy, when you promised to hold my hand on my graduation day.

You were my pillar of strength Daddy, and I know I have made you proud wherever you are.

Solely missed.

## Declaration



### **DECLARATION OF ORIGINALITY – CONDUCT OF ASSESSED WORK** **ASSESSED WORK WHICH DOES NOT HAVE THIS FORM ATTACHED WILL NOT BE** **ACCEPTED**

**Research Degree Program:** PhD Diagnostic Imaging (Ultrasound) online long-distance (FT)

**Assessment Title:** PhD Thesis Report

**Title of the report:** Duplex ultrasound assessment of early-stage peripheral artery disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients.

**The family name of candidate:** Tityiwe

**Given Name of candidate:** Josephine. S.

**ID number:** @00185213

In presenting my PhD thesis, I declare that I have read and understood the University Policy on Academic Misconduct

(Available at <http://www.salford.ac.uk/about-us/corporate-information/governance/policies-and-procedures/browse-by-theme/2>) and that:-

1. this work is my own
2. the work of others used in its completion has been duly acknowledged
3. I have been granted the appropriate level of ethical approval by the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe and the University of Salford, UK, and the approval confirmation letters are attached in the appendices section.

Signature of candidate:

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Josephine S. Tityiwe'.

Date: **30 October 2020**

## **Abbreviations**

**PAD** - Peripheral Artery Disease

**HbA<sub>1c</sub>** - Glycated Haemoglobin Levels

**EGFR** - Estimated Glomerular Filtration Rate

**MRCZ** - Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe

**SEM** - Standard Error of Measurement

**SDD** - Smallest Detectable Difference

**ICC** - Intraclass Correlation Coefficient

**%CV** - Percentage Coefficient of Variation.

**USA** - United State of America

**UK** - United Kingdom

**BRJ** - Beetroot Juice

**NO** - Nitric Oxide

## Thesis Abstract

### Duplex ultrasound assessment of early-stage peripheral artery disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients.

**Keywords:** Spectral Doppler imaging, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, vessel diameter, resistive index, nitrite, nitric oxide, systolic blood pressure, diastolic blood pressure.

**Objectives:** i) To determine the repeatability of ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in diabetic patients with early-stage peripheral artery disease (PAD); ii) To determine whether there is a difference in blood flow between the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls.

iii) To determine the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow and blood pressure in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD compared to non-diabetic controls.

**Methods:** In the first investigation, within and between sessions reliability intraclass correlation coefficients [ICC], percentage coefficient of variation [%CV]), measurement error (standard error of measurement [SEM] and smallest detectable difference [SDD] were calculated for peak systolic velocity (PSV), resistive index (RI), pulsatility index (PI), and vessel diameter inner to the inner (VDI) to establish their repeatability in measuring blood flow in the popliteal arteries [PA], anterior tibial arteries [ATA] and posterior tibial arteries [PTA] of diabetic patients with early-stage peripheral artery disease [PAD]. Paired *t*-tests were performed and effect sizes calculated to establish if the differences between sessions were significant or meaningful. In the second investigation, PSV, RI and PI were compared between diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls. Two samples of *t*-test and effect sizes were performed to determine if differences between groups were significant or meaningful. In the third investigation, PSV, systolic blood pressure (SBP), and diastolic blood pressure (DBP) were utilised to assess blood flow in the PA, 90 minutes, 150 minutes and 210 minutes after ingestion of beetroot juice and compared between groups. Two-way analyses of variance and posthoc analyses were performed to compare the two groups across 4 - time points after the intake of beetroot juice, with a series of one sample and two samples *t*-tests, performed and effect sizes calculated to compare dependent variables within and between groups at individual time points respectively.

**Results:** In the first investigation, PSV, PI and RI showed very good ( $ICC \geq 0.8$ ;  $0.6 - 0.9$ , 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC \leq 1.0$ ;  $1.0 - 1.0$ , 95% CI) reliability and acceptably low variability ( $\leq 5.6\%$ CV) both within and between sessions. The SEM was acceptably low ( $SEM \leq 1.1$ ) with low SDD ( $SDD < 10\%$ ) for all parameters other than VDI-PTA ( $SDD = 13.6\%$ ). In the second investigation, PSV and RI were significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P < 0.05$ ;  $d \geq 2.1$ ), in diabetic patients compared to controls, other than PI-PTA ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.3$ ). In the third investigation, within groups PSV, SBP and DBP reduced significantly and meaningfully across all time points ( $p \leq 0.02$ ;  $d \geq 1.7$ ). However, SBP and PSV showed no significant or meaningful difference between groups only during the 150 - 210 minutes time point ( $p < 0.0001$ ) while DBP showed no significant or meaningful difference between groups throughout all time points.

**Conclusions:** PSV, PI and RI were robust in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD except for VDI (investigation 1). PSV and RI demonstrated effects of early-stage PAD in the lower limbs diabetic patients except for PI-PTA (investigation 2). Beetroot juice ingestion resulted in a significant reduction of PSV, SBP and DBP in the PA during the 150 - 210 minutes time points (investigation 3).

Correspondence to: Josephine S Tityiwe, National University of Science and Technology, Radiography Department, Corner Cecil/Gwanda Road, P. O. Box AC 939 Ascot, Bulawayo, Zimbabwe.

Email: [josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw](mailto:josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw) / [J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk](mailto:J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk)

## **CHAPTER 1-Thesis introduction**

This thesis was conducted in three experimental investigations and the first investigation aimed to firstly determine the repeatability of ultrasound parameters which include peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner in measuring blood flow in 10 asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD to establish their robustness before their utilisation in a larger sample size of participants in the second investigation. In the second investigation, the aim was to determine if the robust ultrasound parameters from the first investigation would be able to detect the effects of early-stage PAD in the lower limb blood flow of 35 asymptomatic diabetic patients compared to 36 non-diabetic controls.

In the third investigation, the aim was to determine if the robust ultrasound parameters from the second investigation alongside systolic blood pressure (SBP) and diastolic blood (DBP) would be able to show the acute effects of ingested beetroot juice by the same sample of participants from the second investigation.

In this chapter, the first outline is an overview of the main pathological process being researched in this thesis which is Type 2 diabetes and its complication of peripheral arterial disease (PAD) in the lower limb arteries, followed by the overview of the current methods of imaging PAD and therapy then finally the rationale which prompted the undertaking of this thesis.

### **1.1 What is Diabetes Mellitus?**

Diabetes is a highly oxidative and inflammatory process which encompasses a group of pathologies which cause various disorders of metabolism, which is mainly caused by either non-secretion of the hormone insulin by the pancreas (Type I diabetes) or insulin resistance which refers to the body's inability to effectively use the secreted hormone insulin (Type II diabetes) to enable sufficient metabolism of glucose, which in turn results in hyperglycaemia and



the increased metabolism of fats and proteins (Steinberg, 2009; Steinberg and Wizturn 2010; Jude 2014; Kaku 2010).

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus manifests following the destruction of pancreatic  $\beta$ -cells either due to idiopathic causes or autoimmune reactions in the pancreas. This results in a total deficiency of insulin for glucose metabolism, however, Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus is a heterogeneous disorder caused by a combination of genetic factors related to the impaired insulin secretion, insulin resistance and environmental factors such as obesity, overeating, lack of exercise, stress and ageing (Kaku, 2010; Bhatia et al., 2004) in particular people aged over 30 years but evidence has indicated it increasing in younger people (less than 30 years) especially the obese (Seino et al., 2010; Biswas et al., 2006). Evidence has also indicated a positive correlation between parental history of diabetes and the gradual manifestation of its symptoms such as reduced insulin secretion in the offspring of such parents (Vaukhonen et al., 2000) and lifestyle factors like overweight, and higher levels of triglycerides (Chen et al., 2012; Sun et al., 2013; Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG 28) NICE, 2018; Macleod et al., 2008).

Confirmation of chronic hyperglycaemia is essential for the diagnosis of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus and it is concluded if there is a fasting plasma glucose level of greater or equal to 126 mg/dl (greater or equal to 70 mmol/l), a glycated haemoglobin level of greater or equal to 7 %, Albumin: Creatinine ratio of greater or equal to 30 mg/g and microalbuminuria greater or equal to 20  $\mu$ g/min (Seino et al., 2010; Sun et al., 2013; Biswas et al., 2006). Type 2 Diabetes is commonly associated with raised blood pressure, disturbed blood lipid levels and a tendency to develop thrombosis thus an increased risk for cardiovascular diseases (Kiboki et al., 2000; Zeng et al., 2000; Kim et al., 2001). Prior evidence (Norgren et al., 2007; Yoshimura et al., 2006) has also indicated that each 1% increase in glycated haemoglobin results in a 25 % increase in the risk of PAD.

### 1.1.1 Clinical Management of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus.

Some countries, such as the United Kingdom (UK) and United States of America (USA), have well developed national guidelines on the management and treatment of Type 2 Diabetes in adults (16 - 68 years), and the guidelines are current, evidence-based and patient-centred (Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG28), NICE, 2015; Eisenstein et al., 2017; Rooke et al., 2011). However, according to the National Strategy of Zimbabwe's health delivery system for 2016-2020, it was noted that currently Zimbabwe has not yet implemented policies which strengthen the utilisation of global guidelines on the management of Type 2 Diabetes and other communicable diseases across the country and there was advocacy for these guidelines to be implemented (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016; Hakim et al., 2005). The UK and USA guidelines of Type 2 Diabetes management in adults were designed to be easily understood by the healthcare professionals, the diabetic patients as well as their families and carers while they are availed at primary care level (Carthy 2013; Eisenstein et al., 2017; Hirsch et al., 2005; Rooke et al., 2011). These guidelines have been tailored in a systematic approach which supports patients' change of behaviour in the following aspects;

- i) Healthy life choices which include healthy eating, physical activity, tobacco cessation, weight management and effective ways to cope with stress.
- ii) Self-management of disease which includes self-monitoring for blood pressure which should be maintained at least below 140/80 mmHg and below 130/80 mmHg if there is kidney, eyes or cerebral disease.
- iii) Glucose monitoring which should be maintained as glycated haemoglobin levels ( $HbA_{1c}$ ) 53 mmol/l (7.0%), while antiplatelet therapy is offered as Aspirin or Clopidogrel) but will not be prescribed for patients without cardiovascular disease.

- iv) Prevention of diabetes complications which include self-monitoring for foot health, active participation in screening for eyes, feet, kidneys and immunisations.
- v) Identification of self-management problems and develop strategies to solve these problems including self-selected behavioural goal setting.
- vi) Treatment options include firstly a standard release Metformin as the initial drug treatment, and where metformin is contraindicated or not tolerated, initial drug treatment with dipeptidyl peptidase-4 or a Sulfonylurea will be considered.

Clinical management for patients with type 2 diabetes at Mpilo hospital diabetic clinic in Zimbabwe utilises Sliding Scale insulin (SSI) method and according to the Colunga-Lozano et al., (2018), the SSI method refers to increasing administration of premeal insulin dose based on the blood sugar level before the meal. The following steps are undertaken in the management of diabetic patients at Mpilo hospital in Zimbabwe;

- i) Random blood sugar testing is done on the patients as they present to the clinic,
- ii) If the random sugar levels signal hyperglycaemia which reflects as greater than 20 mmol/l the patient would be admitted in the hospital.
- iii) The patient is put on an insulin injection which is offered on a sliding scale thus matching the level of hyperglycaemia in the patient (Colunga-Lozano et al., 2018).
- iv) Glycated haemoglobin levels (HbA<sub>1c</sub>) tests are ordered though limited by affordability by most patients, and if again these tests are found to be indicating hyperglycaemia which reflects as HbA<sub>1c</sub> greater or equal to 7% then insulin is offered on a sliding scale as follows;

Above 16% HbA <sub>1c</sub>	12 units Insulin
12 – 16% HbA <sub>1c</sub>	8 units Insulin
8 – 12% HbA <sub>1c</sub>	4 units Insulin
HbA <sub>1c</sub> <8%	nothing is prescribed.

- v) During the first 24 – 48 hrs, Urea and electrolyte tests would be ordered to assess the preserved renal function.
- vi) If Estimated Glomerular Filtration Rate is above 45 ml/min/1.74 m the patient is prescribed on oral medication mostly Metformin drugs as backbone therapy.
- vii) The patient is admitted at least for 10 days in the hospital and they then receive counselling about healthy eating, feet care and the wearing of comfortable shoes, exercising and stopping smoking.
- viii) No antiplatelet therapy is offered yet in these patients.

### **1.1.2 Aetiology of peripheral artery disease (PAD) in Diabetic patients.**

In the endothelial cells of arterial walls under normal circumstances insulin stimulates the expression and activity of endothelial nitric oxide synthase, resulting in increased production of nitric oxide which is critical for the process of vasodilation, thus maintaining stable blood pressure in the human body (Kiboki et al., 2000; Zeng et al., 2000; Kim et al., 2001). Endothelial nitric oxide is also part of the antioxidant defence system responsible for clearing reactive oxygen species, low-density lipoproteins and free radicals which are mostly produced during a host of defence and immunologic reactions by activated macrophages, thus retarding the rate of atherogenesis (Steinberg, 2009; Steinberg and Wizturn, 2010).

Insulin also promotes and maintains vascular smooth muscle cells in a well-differentiated and contractile state, thus reducing the chances of proliferation due to poor differentiation by these cells in its absence (Kiboki et al., 2000; Zeng et al., 2000; Kim et al., 2001). These stimulatory effects of insulin on Endothelial

Nitric Oxide Synthase and nitric oxide production are therefore equally important in preventing endothelial dysfunction and early pro-atherosclerotic changes which lead to PAD (Kiboki et al., 2000; Zeng et al., 2000; Kim et al., 2001).

Peripheral Artery Disease is thus defined as atherosclerosis of the distal aorta and lower limb arteries causing arterial narrowing and impairment of blood circulation to the legs and diabetes is one of the main risk factors for causing PAD besides smoking hypertension and dyslipidaemia (Sun et al., 2013; Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG 28), NICE, 2015).

The chronic absence of insulin in diabetic patients also leads to a chronic absence of nitric oxide resulting in high blood pressure, dyslipidaemia, high levels of Reactive Oxygen Species, Low-Density Lipoproteins and free radicals in the circulation resulting in a gradual build-up of plaque and narrowing of arterial walls (Steinberg, 2009; Steinberg and Witztum, 2010; Boaz et al., 2000), thus diabetes accelerates and worsens the occurrence of atherosclerosis increasing the risks of cardiovascular complications such as stroke, retinopathy, nephropathy and peripheral artery disease to mention a few. Such complications constitute the main causes of poor prognosis amongst diabetic patients if left untreated (Seino et al., 2010).

Peripheral arterial disease is therefore defined as atherosclerosis of the distal aorta and lower limb arteries causing arterial narrowing and impairment of blood circulation to the legs. Diabetes follows smoking as one of the main risk factors for PAD, besides hypertension and dyslipidaemia (Sun et al., 2013; Jude, 2004; Peihua, 2003). This process of atherogenesis progresses gradually in diabetic patients, even though most of them may be asymptomatic within the early stages (Sun et al., 2013; Peihua, 2003). However, lack of symptoms may not always be linked with early-stage PAD for evidence has shown lack of symptoms in diabetic patients with late-stage PAD especially if they experience neuropathy or lead lives of inactivity (Sun et al., 2013; Jude, 2004).

According to a study by Fowkes et al., (2013), PAD was shown as the third leading cause of atherosclerotic cardiovascular morbidity after coronary artery disease and stroke both in high income and low to medium-income countries. Gender-specific prevalence rates of PAD were found to increase with age and the prevalence in high-income countries in men at 45 – 49 years was 5.28% (95% CI, 3.38 - 8.17) while in women it was 18.83% (95% CI, 12.03 - 28.25%), though prevalence was higher in men from low to medium income countries than men from high-income countries.

In the rating of risk factors for PAD, diabetes was rated second after smoking and a prevalence of 1.88% (95% CI, 1.60 - 2.14) of diabetes was noted in high-income countries versus a 1.47% (95% CI, 1.29 - 1.68) prevalence in low to medium income countries, and this is the income band for Zimbabwe as well (Human Development Indices and Indicators: 2018).

Chronically, the arterial walls will be gradually stenosed starting with small diameter arteries below the knees such is the case with early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients (Sun et al., 2013; Peihua, 2003). However, lack of symptoms may not always be linked with early-stage PAD for evidence has indicated lack of symptoms in diabetic patients with late-stage PAD especially if they experience neuropathy or lead a sedentary lifestyle (Sun et al., 2013; Jude, 2004).

From the early asymptomatic stage, mild PAD then manifests as intermittent claudication, which is a pain in the calf which manifests on walking but is relieved by rest. The peripheral pulses will be mostly normal to mildly decrease while the skin of the lower legs and feet will still be normal. Mild intermittent claudication, in this case, occurs due to ischaemic pain in the leg musculature when the patients walk (Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG28), NICE, 2015; Macleod et al., 2008).

### 1.1.3 Classification of PAD

Classification systems for PAD must be put in place to allow accurate diagnosis of its symptoms in each patient and this enables mapping how each patient will be treated. This consistent grading of patients will enable objective criteria of treating patients with a clinical follow up (Hardman et al., 2014). Prior evidence has indicated that several classification systems have been put in place for utilisation in the classification of PAD in clinical settings, direct patient management and research (Hardman et al., 2014; Rutherford et al., 1997). According to the classification by Rutherford et al., (1997), the asymptomatic grade zero (early-stage PAD) is the category where the patient will not be experiencing symptoms of claudication even though the detected asymptomatic PAD warrants early treatment to slow its progression into critical limb ischaemia.

The classification of PAD by Fontaine et al., (1954) was solely based on clinical symptoms without considering the use of other diagnostic tests, while the classification of PAD by Rutherford et al., (1997), resembles that of Fontaine et al., (1954) but with the addition of objective data in the form of non-invasive information from diagnostic tests, such as treadmill testing, six-minute walk, Ankle Brachial Index and pulse volume recordings (Hardman et al., 2014). Rutherford et al., (1997) also classified symptomatic PAD into acute and chronic forms and they advocated that each form requires a different treatment pathway (Hardman et al., 2014) and this showed a more focussed and effective management pathway for late-stage PAD.

Further classification of PAD by Rutherford et al., (1994) encompasses grade zero which is asymptomatic, then grades one, two and three where the grading of symptoms includes moderate to severe claudication, ischaemic rest pain, minor tissue loss and later major tissue loss. Systolic ankle blood pressure after exercise will be less than 50 mmHg in moderate to severe claudication while resting systolic ankle blood pressure in ischaemic rest pain

symptoms will be less than 40 mmHg. However, in minor to major tissue loss, the systolic resting ankle blood pressure will be less than 60 mmHg (Hardman et al., 2014).

According to Rutherford et al., (1997), the asymptomatic category zero stage for early PAD would be confirmed in a patient who elicits the same pre- and post-ankle blood pressure after undergoing a treadmill exercise or reactive hyperaemia testing with thigh blood flow occlusion, while reduced post- ankle blood pressure is confirmed in patients with late-stage PAD (Hardman et al., 2014). Several prior studies have noted that, with moderate exercise, normal subjects maintain a stable ankle pressure or show a slight increase (Higashi et al., 2001; Philpott and Anderson, 2007) and this was partly owed due to the presence of normal bioavailability levels of nitric oxide and other vasodilatory metabolites in the endothelium of their arteries which affords adequate vasodilation to enable a compensatory increase in blood flow that occurs after this short period of tissue ischaemia (Higashi et al., 2001; Huang, 2005). However, this response is suppressed in patients with cardiovascular risk factors such as hypertension and diabetes, partly due to the presence of endothelial dysfunction in their arteries which may result in reduced bioavailability of nitric oxide and other vasodilatory metabolites (Higashi et al., 2001; Philpott and Anderson, 2007).

Diabetic patients with late-stage PAD thus experience claudication during exercise and physical activity as their arteries are not able to undergo the vasodilatory compensation to meet the enhanced demand for oxygen and metabolites. This as this can lead to further reductions in activity levels resulting in a progressive worsening of the symptoms associated with PAD from diabetes and a greater reliance on medication.

Peripheral Artery Disease is not preventable in cases such as increasing age (Kaku, 2010; Bhatia et al., 2004) and diabetes but its acceleration rate into



critical limb ischaemia may be slowed down (Rutherford et al., 1997; Hardman et al., 2014).

#### **1.1.4 Beetroot juice and therapeutic management of peripheral artery disease.**

The UK and USA guidelines on adult diabetes management outline the prescription of Aspirin /Clopidogrel as antiplatelet therapy in patients with cardiovascular diseases, besides advising on smoking cessation, healthy eating of foods with high fibre, and foods with low glycaemic index sources of carbohydrate, increasing physical activity and exercise and self-monitored feet care (Eisenstein et al., 2017; Rooke et al., 2011, Hirsch et al., 2005; Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG 28), NICE, 2015).

Diets containing natural inorganic nitrate are exogenous sources for the much-needed nitric oxide in patients suffering from highly inflammatory and oxidative diseases like Type 2 diabetes (Clements et al., 2014; Lundberg et al., 2008). Again, evidence has shown that these diets which are rich in inorganic nitrate are associated with inhibition of platelet aggregation, preservation and improvement of endothelial dysfunction which may be caused by diabetes in the arterial walls (Clements et al., 2014; Lundberg et al., 2008; Doel et al., 2005; Hyde et al., 2014). Some of the vegetable diets rich in natural inorganic nitrate include beetroot, green leafy vegetables such as spinach, rocket, Chinese cabbage and lettuce were also found to contain large sources of inorganic nitrate (Clements et al., 2014; Lundberg et al., 2008; Doel et al., 2005; Hyde et al., 2014). Prior evidence has indicated that beetroot juice may improve blood flow via vasodilation in healthy participants resulting in improvement during exercise (Vanhatalo et al., 2011) and has been used successfully in the treatment and reduction of blood pressure in healthy participants (Webb et al., 2008; Hobbs et al., 2012) and subjects with cardiovascular disease and Type 2 Diabetes (Kenjale et al., 2011; Clifford et al., 2015; Siervo et al., 2013;

Bahadoran et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013) like participants who ingested dietary nitrate salts (Kapil, 2010; Bond et al., 2012).

Nitric oxide gas is produced endogenously from the amino acid L-arginine by three isoforms of nitric oxide synthases in the endothelium of blood vessels, and it is useful as an anti-oxidation defence system and an antiplatelet thus inhibiting the acceleration of atherosclerosis (Siervo et al., 2011; Steinberg, 2009, Steinberg and Witzum, 2010 Kiboki, 2000). This evidence was discovered earlier by Cooke (1996), in his *in vivo* and *in vitro* studies with rabbits when high cholesterol chow was given to white rabbits for 10 weeks to induce atherogenesis and vascular disease in them which was noted in their thoracic arteries by 10 weeks as 30%-40% was involved in lesions and there was reduced NO activity in this state of their endothelium. Arginine was then added to 0.5% cholesterol diet of half the animals at 10, 14, 18 and 23 weeks as a way of inducing enhanced nitric oxide activity in the presence of pre-existing endothelial dysfunction and vascular disease. This administration of arginine restored nitric oxide activity in most of the rabbits at 14 and 18 weeks as evidenced by reduced thicknesses of lesions and plaque in the harvested thoracic aorta as compared to the prior thickness before arginine administration. This effect was associated with an apparent regression in atherogenesis leading to the conclusion that restoring nitric oxide activity reduced monocyte adhesion and accumulation in blood vessels (Cooke, 1996).

Evidence has shown that it is not easy to directly provide oral supplementation of nitric oxide or L-arginine to humans, but this can be done through consumption of dietary supplements (donor drugs) or vegetables rich in inorganic nitrate, like beets, celery, spinach, lettuce, radishes or cereals or cured meat thereby increasing the circulating nitric oxide independent of its endogenous nitric oxide synthases biosynthesis (Webb et al., 2008; Lundberg et al., 2008; Hord et al., 2009; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Clifford et al., 2015). Beetroot contains inorganic nitrate as the main bioactive component

responsible for the reduction of blood pressure, endurance exercise interactions as well as cardiovascular interactions and in concurrence, studies which used beetroot with inorganic nitrate removed as a placebo intervention noted the improved blood flow via vasodilation and increased exercise endurance in the interventional groups (Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Bailey et al., 2009; Clifford et al., 2015).

Following oral consumption, nitrate is quickly absorbed in the stomach, duodenum and jejunum and availed in the circulation. It is later excreted from the circulatory system into the oral cavity where commensal bacteria anaerobes (via nitrate reductive enzymes) mainly found under the back of the tongue bio-activate nitrate and reduce it to nitrite in saliva (the entero-salivary circulation), while the larger portion of nitrate is excreted via kidneys (Kapil et al., 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2010).

When this nitrite in the saliva is swallowed into the acidic stomach, some of it is bio-activated into nitric oxide then both the nitric oxide and nitrite are rapidly absorbed into the circulation peaking within 15 – 45 minutes after oral nitrate administration from nitrate salts but this bioavailability increases to 2.5 – 3 hours when the nitrite and nitric oxide will be availed from the entero-salivary circulation following ingestion of foods rich in inorganic nitrate like beetroot juice (Kapil et al., 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008). Accordingly, this evidence on the bioavailability of nitrite and nitric oxide within 2.5 – 3 hours was evidenced with a closely correlating reduction in blood pressure (Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008), with the increment of cyclic GMP (a sensitive marker for nitric oxide bioavailability (Kapil et al., 2010).

The main purpose of the availed nitric oxide is to maintain endothelial function in the inner walls of the arteries thus maintaining vascular homeostasis through maintaining the oxidative defence system, platelet function, vascular tone and the delicate balance between vasodilation and vasoconstriction (Clifford et al., 2015; Hobbs et al., 2012; Davignon and Ganz, 2004). Therefore this

depletion in nitric oxide availability has been concluded as the main cause of endothelial dysfunction which is considered as a major risk factor for several cardiovascular disorders and in the pathogenesis of hypertension and atherosclerosis (Lidder et al., 2013; Joris and Mensik, 2013).

Beetroot juice is considered as a promising treatment in a range of clinical pathologies associated with oxidative stress and inflammation (Clifford et al., 2015; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013). Being a source of inorganic nitrate, ingestion of beetroot juice increases the bioavailability of nitric oxide to manage these pathologies associated with diminished nitric oxide availability, such as diabetes, hypertension, dyslipidaemia to mention a few, thus diminishing the rate of atherosclerosis (Kapil, 2010; Clements et al., 2014; Clifford et al., 2015; Kannady et al., 2012). A study by McDonagh et al., (2018) showed that beetroot juice was one of the most effective dietary nitrate food forms which allowed effective nitrate metabolism and blood pressure reduction in normotensive adults.

Beetroot juice has been well researched and concentrations of about 5 mmol to 8 mmol and even more of natural inorganic nitrate in beetroot juice have been used in previous beetroot juice studies without any known adverse effects (Clifford et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Kenjale et al., 2011, Webb et al., 2008, Vanhatalo et al., 2010), in other countries. To date, no serious adverse reactions were reported in prior studies of beetroot juice while the previously noted short term after-effects of oral beetroot juice intake include beeturia, red stools, reduction of blood pressure and mild gastrointestinal discomfort (Clifford et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Kenjale et al., 2011; Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008).

This prior evidence on beetroot juice enabled the justification for the administering of beetroot juice to participants in the third investigation of this thesis and the sample for the beetroot juice which was administered to participants in the third investigation of this thesis is shown in figure 1.



**Figure 1** Sample of beetroot juice which was administered to participants in the third investigation of this thesis.

## 1.2 Thesis Rationale

Previously, researchers have shown Ankle Brachial Index utilisation in improving accuracy for the prediction of cardiovascular risk and a low Ankle Brachial Index of less or equal to 0.90 has been associated with presence PAD (Rensick et al., 2004; Rooke et al., 2011; Sanna et al., 2011). Again prior evidence from the Preventive task Force did not support routine screening of asymptomatic individuals since this screening was deemed not to be able to detect the presence of peripheral artery disease (Rooke et al., 2011; Sanna et al., 2011). This, therefore, meant that an Ankle Brachial Index of greater or equal to 90 in asymptomatic individuals would not have mandated necessity of screening for PAD. However, it has also been noted that utilisation of Ankle Brachial Index only to quantify PAD had shortcomings since it is not able to provide the clinicians with objective data providing a clear picture of the clinical severity of the disease (Cacoub et al., 2009). On another note, prior studies have also shown that duplex ultrasound parameters (Rooke et al., 2011) such as peak systolic velocity (Randall et al., 2013) and pulsatility index (Campbell, 1986)

were useful in detecting anatomic location and degree of stenosis of PAD. No prior evidence was found justifying the utilisation of ultrasound parameters to establish the effects of early-stage PAD in the lower limb blood flow of asymptomatic diabetic patients or non-diabetic participants at the point of writing up of this thesis. The second investigation of this thesis thus aimed to fill this literature gap by determining the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of asymptomatic diabetic patients whose categorisation for early-stage PAD was confirmed with a normal reactive hyperaemia test (Rutherford et al., 1997; Hardman et al., 2014). The second investigation of this thesis utilised ultrasound parameters which came out as robust after being tested for repeatability in measuring lower limb blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD in the first investigation of this thesis.

By being diabetic asymptomatic patients already carry a risk factor for PAD and cardiovascular diseases (Sanna et al., 2011; Rooke et al., 2011) and early diagnosis would call for early introduction of interventional therapy. However, Rooke et al.,(2011) recommended antiplatelet therapy for individuals with asymptomatic lower extremity PAD to reduce the risk for cardiovascular diseases (Rooke et al.,2011) while UK NICE guidelines for type 2 diabetes management do prescribe Aspirin or Clopidogrel antiplatelet therapy only to patients with cardiovascular disease risk (Type 2 Diabetes in adults: Management (NG 28), NICE 2015).

On another note, prior evidence has shown that Aspirin or both Aspirin and Clopidogrel administration in both symptomatic and asymptomatic (early-stage PAD) patients as effective preventive antiplatelet therapy for cardiovascular disease such as myocardial infarction though they were associated with higher incidences of minor bleeding which were noted as higher in Aspirin therapy alone (Cacoub et al., 2009). The third investigation of this thesis was trying to fill this gap in the literature by aiming to establish blood flow effects which may occur after beetroot juice ingestion in the lower limb arteries of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD using

ultrasound parameters. However, if the effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow were to be significant and meaningful then this would be considered as therapeutic and beetroot juice ingestion may be an effective non-pharmacological alternative to improve blood flow and reduce blood pressure.

According to Sanna et al., (2011), current evidence on the epidemiology of PAD is confined to studies done in the Northern European and American countries and given the fact that epidemiology for atherosclerosis was found to be affected by factors such as genetics, diet, ethics, environment and lifestyle, it becomes possible that the findings for PAD in the southern countries of Europe and America may differ. These findings thus justify the undertaking of the second investigation of this thesis in utilising ultrasound parameters to detect the effects of early-stage PAD in the lower limb arterial blood flow of Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients. Again, to date, no such study has been undertaken in Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients.

The Zimbabwean Health Delivery System is experiencing the burden of many cardiovascular non-communicable diseases such as diabetes, stroke, heart attacks and chronic lung disease, and diabetes is a major contributor to deaths from cardiovascular diseases occupying the fourth place in the top ten (Hakim et al., 2005; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016-2020). Type 2 diabetes mellitus is one of the most prevalent chronic health conditions with an estimated 387 million people affected worldwide, (IDF, 2015) and Zimbabwe is one of the 32 African member countries of the International Diabetic Federation (IDF, 2015). The Zimbabwean country is equally battling with the chronic prevalence of Type 2 diabetes mellitus and its complications and the prevalence of Type 2 diabetes mellitus was 10%. The WHO estimated that 1% of total deaths in Zimbabwe were due to diabetes mellitus and in the year 2014, it was found amongst the national top 20 causes of mortality responsible for about 206 deaths (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016-2020). The number of new cases of diabetes mellitus in Zimbabwe for the age range of 0-24 years was 8

658 and for the age range of greater than 25 years, it was 102 077 (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016-2020).

The Zimbabwe National Health Strategy cost estimation for Non-Communicable Diseases which includes diabetes mellitus was projected to cost up to US\$7.4bn from 2016 to 2020, while the mean per capita cost for these Non-Communicable Diseases was projected at US\$ 91 (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). Accordingly, the National Health Strategy for Zimbabwe (2016-2020) noted the shortage of basic commodities such as glucostrips and essential medicines and delayed utilisation of services as the major drawbacks to proper monitoring of diabetes mellitus and its complications in Zimbabwe. The report also noted that proper monitoring of diabetes mellitus in Zimbabwe was crucial to mitigate the rate of complications arising from poorly controlled blood glucose levels and this could be strengthened by promoting strategies seeking to address healthy life and diet, improvement of commodities availability and screening (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016 - 2020).

With this prior background on the Zimbabwean situation about diabetes mellitus, the third investigation of this thesis focussed on the ultrasound assessment of the acute effects of ingested beetroot juice on the lower limbs arterial blood flow of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD aiming to establish if the findings could contribute information towards an earlier and affordable non-pharmacological alternative for the management of blood flow and blood pressure in diabetic patients within the secondary healthcare set up of the Zimbabwean health delivery system. The background information on the Zimbabwean health delivery system indicated that ultrasound machines were available in secondary care district hospitals in Zimbabwe while beetroot is a readily available vegetable easily grown by Zimbabweans. See section 1.2.1 for more detail on the background of the Zimbabwean health delivery system.

Prior information from beetroot juice studies conducted in other populations has indicated multiple health benefits from ingestion of it such as reduction of



blood pressure (Webb et al., 2008; Hobbs et al., 2012; McDonagh et al., 2018), the increment of time to exercise (Vanhatalo et al., 2011; Gilchrist et al., 2013) to mention a few and these changes in blood flow are hypothesised to result from vasodilation but to date, this has not been measured or reported.

### **1.2.1 Background information**

In this thesis, the sample for diabetic patients with early-stage PAD was recruited from a quaternary care Hospital (Mpilo central hospital) diabetic clinic in the city of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe, while the sample for non-diabetic controls was recruited from the staff members and students of the National University of Science and Technology in the city of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. Myself as the principal investigator for this thesis, am a lecturer in the department of Radiography formerly Applied Physics at the National University of Science and Technology in the same city of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe.

According to the most recent census carried out in Zimbabwe in 2012, the population of Zimbabwe is about 13 061 239 and the majority population is of the Black-African ethnic group (98.6%), while there is a minority population of Europeans (0.6%), Asians (0.2%) and mixed (0.4%) (Dzinotizei, 2013). The fact that Black/Africans formed the majority population in Zimbabwe and at the research centre made it possible to recruit the required sample size of diabetic patients from one homogenous ethnic group of Black/Africans for this thesis. Cacoub et al., (2009) noted that the epidemiology of PAD in various ethnic groups, various lifestyles and diets is not uniform, thus for this thesis it was important to recruit the required thesis sample size from a homogenous population.

Zimbabwe's health referral system is a four tiered-pyramidal system with the lower level primary health facilities (Clinics), secondary level facilities (District hospitals), tertiary level facilities (Provincial hospitals), and quaternary level facilities (Central hospitals), while the administrative activities and decision making in the public sector are governed by the Ministry of Health and Child

Care (Osika et al., 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). The healthcare facilities for Zimbabwe are also found in non-profit making facilities, church organisations, companies and profit-making private facilities. Primary care in Zimbabwe consists of clinics, polyclinics, private clinics, mission clinics, council municipal clinics and rural health centres. (Table 1). These are the first port of call health care centres for patients in both rural and urban centres and they are mostly manned by a group of nurses and nurse aides and the services provided include basic prevention, maternity and curative services (Osika et al., 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). Patients presenting with more serious symptoms beyond primary care health services are referred to district hospitals (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016).

Secondary care (district hospitals) in Zimbabwe receive referred patients from primary care facilities and these district hospitals represent the lowest care level manned by one or two medical doctors besides the registered general nurses, nurse aides, a radiographer/x-ray operator and other few healthcare professionals (Osika et al; 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016).

District hospitals are equipped with basic radiology equipment which mostly includes an x-ray and an ultrasound machine, while missionary, private and company facilities are also able to serve as district hospitals and speciality issues which cannot be handled at the district level of care are referred to tertiary care (Osika et al; 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014). The fact that there are ultrasound machines in secondary care centres where primary care centres mostly refer their patients this means that would be feasible to implement the proposed findings of this thesis of screening for early-stage PAD in secondary care using duplex ultrasound. Enhanced early detection of PAD in diabetic patients whilst still in secondary care will prompt for early introduction of therapy which may be enhanced as ingestion of beetroot juice

to maintain good blood flow and blood pressure, thus also reducing the numbers referrals congesting into tertiary and quaternary care centres as well.

Tertiary care consists of the provincial hospitals which are in eight out of ten provinces of Zimbabwe excluding Harare and Bulawayo provinces where quaternary care health facilities are found (Osika et al; 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). Various unique and difficult cases are referred from tertiary care hospitals in the provinces to the five central (quaternary care) hospitals, thus three in Harare, two in Bulawayo and one in Chitungwiza, and the most advanced equipment, staff and pharmaceuticals for dealing with the most severe cases are found in these quaternary care facilities. (Osika et al., 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014). More detail on the number of hospitals and primary healthcare centres in Zimbabwe is outlined in table 1.

**Table 1** shows the profile of Zimbabwean healthcare facilities (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016).

**Table 1 removed due to copyright restrictions**

Despite this organised way for referring patients from primary care up to the appropriate level of the healthcare in Zimbabwe, in the past ten years, this referral system stopped effectively working and lots of patients were now seeking primary or secondary care at all facility levels due to geographical convenience and this has led to overcrowding in tertiary and quaternary care

hospitals (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). This diabetic participant for this thesis was recruited carried out at a diabetic clinic for Mpilo central hospital, a quaternary care centre and it was feasible to recruit the required sample size of diabetic patients with early-stage (asymptomatic) PAD for this thesis due to this disorganised referral system which was apparent during the conduct of this thesis. However, in the 2016 - 2020 National Strategy of Zimbabwe, it was outlined that there was a need to enforce the initially existing referral system which was based on the primary health care approach and patient education to ensure that hospital services are only limited to those who need them thus reducing unnecessary overcrowding in the hospitals (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji 2016).

In the early 1990s to 2005, the Zimbabwean health delivery system was well funded and not very dependent on foreign donor funding, however since the depreciation of the economy from 2006-2008, the health system became underfunded and was heavily dependent on foreign donor funding (Osika et al., 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). The period of 2009-2012 saw the economy rebounding and beginning to reverse the consequences of the near-collapse of the health delivery system which occurred in 2008, although the period of 2013-2015 saw a dramatic drop in economic growth and the prospects for the next 5 years were predicted to remain sluggish (Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). However, as of the year 2016, all tertiary care hospitals in Zimbabwe are now equipped with computed tomography (CT) scanners, modernised ultrasound scanners and the modernised computed and digital radiography (CR and DR) X-ray machines, while quaternary care hospitals such as Mpilo and Parirenyatwa are now also having modernised Radiotherapy treatment machinery and Nuclear Medicine scanners, but Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) is still currently available in private centres located in the Harare and Bulawayo provinces. In the National Health Strategy for Zimbabwe, 2016-2020, it was noted that there has been equitable commodities supply and

security across referral levels particularly hospital levels (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016). This background information showed that despite the improved furnishing of tertiary and quaternary care centres with modernised equipment ideal for the care of the diabetic patients in late-stage PAD, there is the problem of flooding and overcrowding in these centres as well. Therefore, enhanced detection of early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients with the readily available and cheap duplex ultrasound modality in secondary care centres will reduce overcrowding of tertiary and quaternary centres with diabetic patients having symptomatic PAD.

## **1.3 Thesis aims and research questions**

### **1.3.1 Introduction**

The methodology of this thesis was conducted as three investigations which corresponded into each other and the first investigation is outlined in chapter 4, the second investigation is outlined in chapter 5 and finally, the third investigation is outlined in chapter 6. The aims and research questions for each of these three investigations are outlined accordingly in sections 1.3.2 to 1.3.4.1.

### **1.3.2 Investigation 1 aims**

- i) To determine the repeatability of ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD.
- ii) To determine if there were any significant or meaningful differences in dependent variables (ultrasound blood flow parameters) between sessions.

#### **1.3.2.1 Investigation 1 research questions**

- i) Can the ultrasound parameters repeatably measure blood flow in the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD?

- ii) Are there any significant or meaningful differences in dependent variables (ultrasound blood flow parameters) between sessions?

### **1.3.3 Investigation 2 aims**

- i) To compare blood flow between the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls using the ultrasound parameters.
- ii) To determine if there were any significant or meaningful differences in dependent variables (ultrasound blood flow parameters) between groups.

#### **1.3.3.1 Investigation 2 research questions**

- i) Is there a difference in blood flow between diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls as determined by ultrasound parameters?
- ii) Are the differences in, dependent variables between groups significantly meaningful?

### **1.3.4 Investigation 3 aim**

To determine the acute effects of beetroot Juice ingestion on the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls using ultrasound parameters.

#### **1.3.4.1 Investigation 3 research questions**

- i) Is there a change in blood flow within non-diabetic lower limb arteries after beetroot juice ingestion as determined by the ultrasound parameters (at 90 minutes; 150 minutes and 210 minutes)?
- ii) Is there a change in blood flow within diabetic lower limb arteries after beetroot juice ingestion as determined by the ultrasound parameters (at 90 minutes; 150 minutes and 210 minutes)?
- iii) Is there a difference in the blood flow changes between non-diabetic and diabetic lower limb arteries after beetroot juice ingestion as determined by the ultrasound parameters?

## Chapter 2-Literature review

### 2.1 Introduction

The following chapter reviewed the literature on the diagnosis and therapeutic management of diabetes and PAD cited in this thesis. In this Narrative Critical Review (Demiris and Washington, 2019), the principal investigator utilised keywords extracted from the topic of each investigation as search items to extract relevant studies from the relevant journals in the Elsevier Science Direct, Pubmed, Scopus, Embase, Cochrane Library, PsycINFO, JAMA, JSTOR and CINAHL databases. The principal investigator then opened a desktop file and saved all these studies and then reviewed them against the research questions for each investigation accordingly. (See section 1.3.2.1 for the first investigation research questions; section 1.3.3.1 for the second investigation research questions and section 1.3.4.1 for the third investigation research questions). The studies were cited based on their clinical significance, the robustness of their methodology (where bias and error were minimised), internal validity and generalisability to the population under study (Umesh et al., 2016).

The principal investigator used the following keywords; *“Duplex ultrasound, repeatability, measurement error, peripheral artery disease, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index, vessel diameter”*, for the first investigation. For the second investigation, the principal investigator used the following keywords; *“peripheral artery disease, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index”*. Accordingly, for the third investigation, the principal investigator utilised the following keywords; *“peripheral artery disease, nitrite, nitric oxide, beetroot juice, blood pressure, peak systolic velocity”*. The principal investigator then summarised, synthesised and integrated the findings of these studies into the literature review of this thesis and referenced the articles which were incorporated in the write-up.



### **2.1.1 Methods for diagnosing PAD**

Accurate diagnosis of PAD is crucial to allow timely specialist referral and improve patient outcome even when it can be an incidental finding in asymptomatic people attending a screening for other general examinations, (Rooke et al., 2011). Accordingly, the initial diagnosis for PAD with non-imaging tests is initially based on the eliciting of Intermittent claudication symptoms following graded treadmill testing, six-minute walks in the elderly patients, and abnormal reactive hyperaemic test or an Ankle Brachial Index of less or equal to 0.90 (Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016; Rooke et al., 2011; Norgren et al., 2007).

Early-stage/asymptomatic PAD categorised as Ankle Brachial Index greater or equal to 0.90, or normal reactive hyperaemic/ treadmill test was not recommended for screening with Ankle Brachial Index since the results from such patients were deemed not useful (Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016; Rooke et al., 2011) and duplex ultrasound was not recommended for the imaging of early-stage PAD in the current evidence during the writing up of this thesis. Prior evidence has advocated utilisation of duplex ultrasound in imaging late-stage (symptomatic) PAD as a modality to localise it and to map a way for surgical intervention, while a low Ankle Brachial Index of less or equal to 0.90 is significantly associated with classical cardiovascular risk factors (Sanna et al., 2011; Rooke et al., 2011). The sensitivity and specificity of duplex ultrasound (Collin et al., 2007; Leiner et al., 2005), as well as its reliability in the imaging of symptomatic (late-stage) PAD (Eiberg et al., 2010), has already been documented.

The available diagnostic imaging tests for symptomatic (late-stage) PAD besides duplex ultrasound include Magnetic Resonance Angiography, Computed Tomography Angiography and Digital Subtraction Angiography. However, duplex ultrasound and magnetic resonance angiography offer the least invasive options which avoid the use of ionising radiation and duplex ultrasound also offers the advantage of functional assessment of arterial

stenosis. Though it is the most operator-dependent modality, Ultrasound is the cheapest and the most accessible imaging modality (Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG 28), NICE, 2018; Macleod et al., 2008; Carthy, 2013; Eisenstein et al., 2017).

This thesis, therefore, aimed to fulfil the following gap in the literature as follows;

i) determining the robustness of duplex ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in lower extremities of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD (first investigation) before utilising them with a larger sample size in the second and third investigations of this thesis.

ii) Determining the capability of robust ultrasound parameters from the first investigation in demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the blood flow of asymptomatic diabetic patients (second investigation), and finally establishing the effects of beetroot juice ingestion on the lower limb blood flow of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls who were imported from the second investigation, using robust ultrasound parameters from the first and second investigations alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure.

### **2.1.2 Treadmill testing and six-minute walks in diagnosing PAD**

A standardised protocol for treadmill testing with or without Ankle Brachial Index assessments and the six minutes' walk has been recommended as class 1 level evidence in the ACC/AHA guidelines, (Hirsch et al., 2005; Rooke et al., 2011) to provide the most objective evidence of the magnitude of the functional limitation of claudication and to measure the response to therapy. A 6-minute walk test is an objective assessment of functional limitation of claudication and response to therapy in the elderly individuals and others not able to withstand treadmill testing (Hirsch et al., 2005; Rooke et al., 2011). Standardised exercise protocol on motorised Treadmill test are either grade or fixed to enable reproducibility of measurements in assessing the magnitude of

functional limitation of claudication (Hirsch et al., 2005; Rooke et al., 2011). In this investigation, early-stage PAD was categorised according to the grade zero asymptomatic stage by Rutherford et al., (1997) and the objective assessment method was a normal reactive hyperaemic test.

### **2.1.3 Ankle Brachial Index in diagnosing PAD.**

The diagnosis of symptomatic PAD has been exclusively achieved through the measurement of Ankle Brachial Index and according to Varaki et al., (2018); Rooke et al., (2011), Ankle Brachial Index is calculated by taking the higher of the systolic pressure of the dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial arteries and dividing it by the highest systolic brachial pressure. Therefore an Ankle Brachial Index greater than 1.0 and less or equal to 1.3 is considered normal, Ankle Brachial Index of less or equal to 0.90 is considered indicative of PAD and a risk for cardiovascular diseases, Ankle Brachial Index of 0.4 - 0.9 is indicative of intermittent claudication and Ankle Brachial Index of less than 0.4 indicates critical limb ischaemia (Gerhard- Herman et al., 2016). Prior evidence has again shown Ankle Brachial Index to be a highly sensitive and specific screening tool for PAD (Varaki et al., 2018; Rooke et al., 2011; Collins et al., 2007) and Ankle Brachial Index is a cheap and simple test which is also easily accessible to clinicians. However, Ankle Brachial Index has a weakness in that it does not provide objective data to assist the clinician with information about the severity of the disease.

A study by Sanna et al., (2011), examined the prevalence of asymptomatic PAD as determined by Ankle Brachial Index in Italian subjects presenting with moderate cardiovascular disease risk in the absence of diabetes or Overt vascular disease and their findings showed that a low Ankle Brachial Index of less or equal to 0.90 was associated with the presence of PAD in 22.9% of the sample of n = 5 112. Normal Ankle Brachial Index of 0.9 - 0.99 (23.9%) and greater than 0.99 (53.23%) was found in the rest of the sample participants. This study showed evidence that the Ankle Brachial Index could demonstrate low

values of less or equal to 0.9 in asymptomatic patients with moderate cardiovascular disease risk in the absence of diabetes and overt vascular disease. Thus, the study concluded that such patients needed further screening for PAD. However, in the study by Sanna et al., (2011), Ankle Brachial Index could not demonstrate the presence of PAD in the remaining 87.13% of participants who had a normal value of greater or equal to 0.9. This remains a gap in the literature in this scenario where no other imaging modality has been recommended to rule out asymptomatic PAD in participants of a normal range Ankle Brachial Index of greater or equal to 0.90 during the writing up of this thesis. The second investigation of this thesis therefore aimed to provide some evidence to fill this gap in the literature by determining whether ultrasound parameters could demonstrate early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients.

#### **2.1.4 Colour Duplex Ultrasound for Imaging PAD**

Colour duplex ultrasound combines the use of B-mode imaging/greyscale with the pulsed wave or continuous wave Doppler modes and colour when evaluating the anatomy and haemodynamic function of the vascular system (Varaki et al., 2018; Andersen, 2010). Thus, the B-mode images of arteries can be sampled for velocity spectra which are based on the Doppler principle when the ultrasound waveform undergoes frequency shift proportional to the velocity of the moving red blood cells in the arteries (Andersen, 2010; Hamments, 2014; Chavhan et al., 2008). This facility in colour duplex ultrasound enables haemodynamic changes in arteries due to PAD to be assessed through the utilisation of Doppler ultrasound parameters such as peak systolic velocity; resistive index and pulsatility index which are measured from the Doppler velocity spectrum waveform (Dhaliwal et al., 2007; Varaki et al., 2018; Hamments, 2014).

These Doppler ultrasound parameters undergo changes which correlate with the degree of stenosis caused by PAD in the arterial lumen. Therefore, the

values of these parameters may be interpreted to confirm and grade late-stage (symptomatic) PAD (Andersen, 2010, Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014; Hamments, 2014; Chavhan et al., 2008).

The B-mode/greyscale imaging enables the visualisation of two-dimensional images of arteries and information about diameter changes (Andersen, 2010; Varaki et al., 2018; Dhaliwal et al., 2007) due to PAD are seen. However, early detection of PAD in diabetic patients is highly recommended since it will enable therapeutic interventions to be initiated earlier in patients with a risk for cardiovascular diseases (Andersen 2010; Hernando and Conejero, 2007).

Prior evidence has shown that colour duplex ultrasound has documented high sensitivity (76%; 95% CI: 69% - 82%) and high specificity (93%; 95% CI: 91% - 95%) when compared with contrast-enhanced Magnetic Resonance Angiography with a higher sensitivity of about (84%; 95% CI: 78% - 89%) and specificity of about (97%; 95% CI: 95% - 98%) in detecting late-stage PAD in 295 referred patients (Leiner et al., 2005; Collins et al, 2007; Varaki et al., 2018). Again, colour duplex ultrasound is capable of demonstrating plaque which causes greater or equal to 50% arterial luminal reduction (Leiner et al., 2005; Varaki et al., 2018; Eiberg et al., 2010).

The reliability of colour duplex ultrasound in assessing blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with late-stage PAD was undertaken by Eiberg et al, (2010) in a prospective study of 530 participants and Digital Subtraction Angiography was the gold standard. In the study by Eiberg et al., (2010) colour duplex ultrasound was performed a day before the digital subtraction angiography examination for each patient over two years and the patients were suffering from intermittent claudication and critical limb ischaemia. The assessment was done in the common femoral arteries down to the pedal arteries in the worst symptomatic leg of each participant and the agreement between duplex ultrasound and digital subtraction angiography was obtained by using kappa. The study showed a very good agreement ( $k > 0.8$ ) or good

agreement ( $0.8 \geq k > 0.6$ ) in most segments, but moderate agreement ( $0.6 \geq k > 0.4$ ) in the tibial-peroneal trunk and the peroneal artery. Agreement between colour duplex ultrasound and digital subtraction angiography was significantly higher ( $k = 0.75$ ; 95% CI: 0.70 - 0.80) in the supra-genicular segments than in the infra-genicular segments ( $k = 0.63$ ; 95% CI: 0.59 - 0.67) ( $p < 0.001$ ) and again colour duplex ultrasound compared favourably with digital subtraction angiography in both tibial vessels and pedal arteries as well.

However, during the writing up of this thesis, there was no evidence regarding the utilisation of duplex ultrasound to quantify or screen for early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients besides the recommendation of Ankle Brachial Index (Hirsh et al., 2005; Rooke et al., 2011). Despite its weakness in showing ballooned values of above 1.4 in calcified arteries of diabetic patients and elderly population (Chen et al., 2015), Ankle Brachial Index was shown weaker in showing normal values of 1-1.3 in participants who had asymptomatic PAD (Rensick et al., 2004). In earlier studies carried on participants with PAD, (Fowkes et al., 1991; Criqui et al., 1985; Hirsh et al., 2001; Dhaliwal 2007) it was noted that asymptomatic PAD was more common than symptomatic PAD in primary care settings despite a low awareness by physicians on this trend, and Hirsh et al., (2001) noted that under-diagnosis of PAD in primary care practice may be a barrier to effective secondary prevention of high ischaemic cardiovascular risk associated with PAD (Hirsh et al., 2001). Thus, Fowkes et al., (1991) and Criqui et al., (1985) in their studies recommended that there was a need for appropriate evaluation of individuals at high risk for cardiovascular diseases. The aim of the second investigation of this thesis was, trying to fill this gap in the literature by determining the capability of ultrasound parameters in demonstrating effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients, while Ankle Brachial Index was performed as a parallel test.

## **2.2 The ultrasound parameters.**

The normal pulsed Doppler velocity spectra recorded from a peripheral lower extremity artery is triphasic with a narrow spectral range of velocities throughout the pulse cycle and this reflects that the arterial red blood cells are moving at a similar velocity and direction and the laminar flow pattern is not disturbed (Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014). The velocity spectra waveform in each cardiac pulse for lower limb arteries reflects blood acceleration during systole, an early diastolic flow reversal caused by the propagated pressure pulse wave and its reflection from a higher downstream resistance followed by the late antegrade diastolic flow. The first component of systole results in measurements typically less than 125 cm/s for each arterial segment (Gerhard-Herman et al., 2006; Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014). There is early diastolic flow reversal in the second wave of the waveform as left ventricular pressure reduces before aortic valve closure. However, in late diastole, there is a small amount of forwarding flow that reflects elastic recoil of vessel walls but this diastolic component is absent in stiff atherosclerotic vessels (Gerhard-Herman et al., 2006). A normal peripheral artery waveform is therefore characterised as high resistance and triphasic (Gerhard-Herman et al., 2006, Chavhan et al., 2008). See figure 2 for an illustration of normal triphasic waveforms in the common femoral artery, superficial femoral artery and popliteal artery.

***Figure 2 removed due to copyright restrictions***

**Figure 2** showing an illustration of normal triphasic flow in the common femoral artery, superficial femoral artery and popliteal artery as blood acceleration during systole, an early diastolic flow reversal and then a late antegrade diastolic flow (Cossman et al., 1989).

### **2.2.1 Peak systolic velocity**

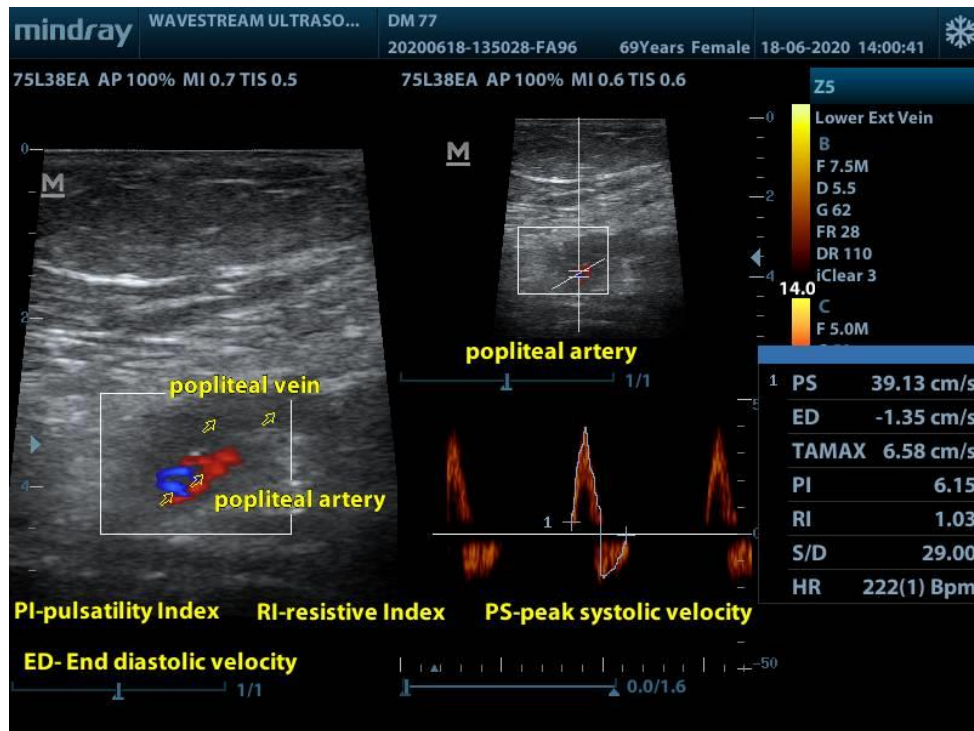
Peak systolic velocity is one of the most commonly used parameters in the grading of arterial stenosis, and its normal values in the tibial arteries of healthy subjects were about  $55 \pm 10$  cm/s, and about  $68 \pm 14$  cm/s in the popliteal



arteries of healthy subjects (Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2006).

Peak systolic velocity has also been shown to be able to demonstrate PAD causing arterial luminal stenosis of greater or equal to 50% (Leiner et al., 2005; Eiberg et al., 2010; Franz et al., 2013; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2006). In another study by Yoshimura et al., (2006), it was shown that type 2 diabetic patients who developed cardiovascular complications on follow up had lower blood flow, ( $p < 0.01$ ), which was due to increased vascular resistance, ( $p < 0.05$ ) and reduced peak systolic velocity caused by late-stage (symptomatic) PAD.

However, during the writing up of this thesis, no prior evidence was found in which peak systolic velocity was utilised to demonstrate haemodynamically - non-significant stenosis in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and the aim of the second investigation of this thesis was to fill this gap in the literature by determining whether peak systolic velocity would be able to demonstrate effects of early-stage PAD in the popliteal artery, anterior tibial artery and posterior tibial artery of asymptomatic Black/African diabetic patients. See figure 3 on how peak systolic velocity was measured in haemodynamically non-significant stenosis.



**Figure 3** showing manual trace measurement for peak systolic velocity (39.13 cm/s), end-diastolic velocity (-1.35 cm/s), resistive index (1.03) and pulsatility index (6.15 cm/s) in a haemodynamically - non-significant stenosis in the popliteal artery by the principal investigator.

## 2.2.2 Pulsatility index

Pulsatility index is defined as the ratio of the peak to the peak height of the Doppler waveform to the mean height. Pulsatility index together with resistive index provide information about blood flow and resistance which cannot be obtained from measurements of peak systolic velocity, and it is calculated from the following formula in equation 1;

$$\text{Pulsatility index} = \frac{\text{Peak systolic velocity} - \text{End Diastolic Velocity}}{\text{Mean Velocity}} \quad 1$$

Prior evidence (Hodgkiss–Harlow and Bandyk 2014; Harrington, 2012) has indicated that normal pulsatility index values in the lower limb arteries for healthy subjects should be greater than 4 while values of less or equal to 4

reflect proximal in-flow occlusive disease. In the common femoral arteries and popliteal arteries, pulsatility index values for healthy individuals are greater than 6 and greater than 8 respectively (Hodgkiss–Harlow and Bandyk 2014; Harrington, 2012). When there is increased resistance to blood flow, the peak systolic velocity peak tends to lower down and the end-diastolic velocity will be reduced or even absent, thus from equation 1 one above, the value of pulsatility index, in this case, will accordingly get reduced. This means that both the peak systolic velocity values and accordingly pulsatility index values can be used to demonstrate changes in blood flow due to PAD. However, during the writing of this thesis, no evidence was found which utilised pulsatility index in the to demonstrate effects of PAD in the lower limbs of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and the aim of this thesis was to partly fill this gap in evidence by utilising pulsatility index to assess effects of early-stage PAD in the blood flow of the popliteal arteries, posterior tibial arteries and anterior tibial arteries of asymptomatic Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients.

### 2.2.3 Vessel diameter inner to inner

Vessel lumen radius has a profound effect on the volume of flow and according to Poiseuille's law the primary factors affecting resistance to flow are the radius of the vessel lumen, length of the vessel and the viscosity of blood as shown in equation 2;

$$\text{Flow volume} = \frac{\text{pressure gradient} \times \text{radius of the vessel}^4}{\text{length of vessel} \times \text{viscosity of blood}} \quad 2$$

Accordingly, a decrease in vessel radius increases the resistance to blood flow to the 4<sup>th</sup> power, but in large parallel arteries, a stenotic lesion will have haemodynamic effects when the arterial radius would have been reduced by 60%, and while for, any given radius reduction the longitudinal pressure drop along the length of the lesion will be significantly enhanced by the presence

of turbulence (Harrington, 2012; Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014). Prior evidence has indicated the normal lumen diameter of popliteal arteries of healthy subjects as  $0.5 \text{ cm} \pm 0.1$  and for tibial arteries as  $0.3 \text{ cm} \pm 0.4$  (Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014), thus in the studied population's vessel diameter values less than the indicated normal values will be indicative of PAD. Sanna et al., (2011) indicated that the epidemiology for atherosclerosis may be affected by factors such as genetics, ethnicities, diet and lifestyle, this means the findings of this thesis on vessel lumen diameter of Black/Africans were bound to be different from the published dimensions of the European countries.

#### 2.2.4 Resistive Index

Blood flows from a region of high pressure to a low-pressure region because of an existing pressure gradient. Blood does encounter resistance to its flow and will only flow if the pressure gradient exceeds resistance and this is illustrated in the Bernoulli equation (Alexander, 2017) as follows in equation 3.

$$\text{Flow volume} = \frac{\text{Pressure gradient}}{\text{Resistance}} \quad 3$$

During systole, the blood pressure will be from the contracting heart while during diastole the blood pressure will be from the elastic recoil of large arteries. The systolic pump is stronger and moves blood forward even if the downstream resistance is very high, but the diastolic pump is weaker and is affected by downward resistance such that there will be reduced or no forward diastolic flow with increasing resistance. The resistive index is calculated from the following formula in equation 4.

$$\text{Resistive Index} = \frac{\text{Peak systolic velocity} - \text{End diastolic velocity}}{\text{Peak systolic velocity}} \quad 4$$

However, since there was no prior evidence on the utilisation of resistive index to demonstrate the effects of PAD in the lower limb arteries blood flow of

asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD, this thesis aimed to provide evidence for filling this gap in the literature.

## **2.3 Contribution to the knowledge**

The contribution to knowledge from the first investigation of this thesis is evidence on the robustness of ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of asymptomatic Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. The second investigation of this thesis contributes evidence on the capability of ultrasound parameters in demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood of asymptomatic Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients.

The third investigation of this thesis contributes evidence on the effects of beetroot juice ingestion on the lower limb blood of asymptomatic Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls as determined by the ultrasound parameters, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure. The ultrasound parameters which were combined as a diagnostic protocol in this thesis have been widely used in studies which undertook colour duplex ultrasound assessments of lower limb arteries for late-stage PAD (Leiner et al., 2005; Eiberg et al., 2010; Franz et al., 2013; Kapil et al., 2010), though this is the first time that the ultrasound parameters which include peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner have been combined this way.

## **Chapter 3-Thesis methodology**

### **3.1 Overview of experimental research investigations**

This thesis was conducted as three investigations which corresponded into one another. The first investigation is outlined in chapter 4, the second investigation is outlined in chapter 5 while the third investigation is outlined in chapter 6. This chapter outlines the main methodological steps which were undertaken in all

the three investigations overall. See section 3.2 for the summarised thesis methodology flow diagram. However, specific methodological steps for each investigation are also outlined in each of the three chapters separately. The principal investigator who undertook this thesis data collection and statistical analysis was me. I am a practising Sonographer and a diagnostic radiographer (Appendices N1, N2 and L) with my private ultrasound rooms (Appendices Q1 to Q4) in the city of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe and I hold certificates in Diagnostic Medical Ultrasound training from the Burwin Institute of Canada (2011-2012) (Appendix I, J, and K) as well as local accreditation by the Zimbabwe Allied Health Practitioners' council (appendices N1 and N2). I also hold a Diploma in Diagnostic Radiography from the University of Zimbabwe, School of Radiography, Harare (2000), A Master's Degree in Professional Development studies (health and Social care) from the University of Salford (2009) and I am a current Radiography lecturer in the Department of Radiography, formerly the Department of Applied Physics at the National University of Science and Technology in Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. I also hold a prior in-house training experience in vascular ultrasound of more than 10 years.

I underwent mentorship by a Bulawayo based Specialist Radiologist in colour Doppler ultrasound mapping in 2015 after enrolling for my PhD studies with the University of Salford in November 2014. See the acknowledgements section for more detail of the mentorship done.

During the conduct of all the three experimental investigations for this thesis, I had the diabetic clinic physician on the cover to monitor the participants for any unexpected reactions during the conduct of the thesis. The diabetic clinic-based physician on the cover also undertook the reactive hyperaemic tests in the presence of the principal investigator in the diabetic clinic during the recruitment stages which enabled the screening of the patients into the early-stage PAD category.

The ultrasound measurements and Ankle Brachial Index measurements for this thesis were undertaken by me in my private ultrasound rooms in the city of

Bulawayo (suite 302A, 3<sup>rd</sup>-floor Halyet house, corner Josiah Tongogara street and 9<sup>th</sup> avenue) (appendices Q1 to Q4), The laboratory for blood testing was also situated at the same premises as my private ultrasound rooms in 4<sup>th</sup> floor (appendix E5). The recruited patients were given money for bus fare to travel to the private ultrasound rooms in town for blood testing and ultrasound measurements on their specific booked dates which were set by the research assistants during recruitment in the diabetic clinic (Appendix V2).

The two research assistants who recruited participants were nurse aides who worked for my private ultrasound rooms and they also underwent prior training by me on how to undertake the socio-medical history of the participants, recruitment of participants and follow up with bookings, collation of data on Microsoft excel sheets, participants' preparation before blood tests and ultrasound measurements and finally aftercare of the participants.

The ultrasound machine and blood pressure machine used for this thesis belong to my private ultrasound rooms and quality control testing was done by my local PhD adviser who is a Medical physicist by profession using a Brachytherapy. Quality Assurance Phantom (model 045). See appendix W for more detail on this phantom.

The funding for this thesis was done by the Research board grant from the National University of Science and Technology, Zimbabwe (appendices V1 and V2) and Beetroot juice was imported from Neal's Yard Health shop based in South African (Appendix T). The ethical process was approved by the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe (appendices O and U) and the Salford University ethics committee (Appendix S).

## 3.2 Thesis Methodology Flow diagram

### Investigation 1

Repeatability study which aimed to establish the within sessions and between sessions reliability and measurement error magnitude of ultrasound parameters consisting of peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner in measuring lower limb blood flow in the lower limb arteries of a cohort of asymptomatic Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage PAD.

#### Decision making 1

Dorsalis pedis artery measurements dropped in both groups due to inconsistent vessel diameter inner to inner measurements. Vessel diameter was then excluded from further analysis in the second and third investigations due to increased measurement errors in the posterior tibial artery.

### Investigation 2

Comparative cohort study aiming to determine capability of robust parameters from first investigation in demonstrating the effects of early stage PAD on lower limb arteries blood flow of Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients through comparison with non - diabetic controls. This stage also aimed to establish any significant or meaningful differences in dependent variables between the two groups which were in comparable conditions.

Within sessions, reliability was essential in this investigation since it had only been established in diabetic patients during the first investigation but not yet in the non-diabetic controls in this investigation. Therefore, this was done to allow comparison to be done between groups.

#### Decision making 2

Pulsatility index was concluded as not robust in demonstrating effects early-stage PAD in the blood flow of the anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries.

The resistive index was dropped to enable a more focused assessment of peak systolic velocity alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure on the popliteal arteries blood flow during the third investigation.

### Investigation 3

Prospective quasi-experimental study aimed at determining if consumption of beetroot juice resulted in meaningful changes in lower limb arterial blood flow in the two groups and if the magnitude of any changes in blood flow after beetroot juice ingestion were greater in one group compared to the other as determined by robust ultrasound parameters from the second investigation alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure.

#### Decision making 3

Only the popliteal arteries were assessed for blood flow changes after beetroot juice intake utilising peak systolic velocity alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure in both groups to minimise the error of measurements due to timing since blood flow changes quickly went away.

The resistive index will be assessed alongside peak systolic velocity in the longitudinal study for post-doctoral work to establish long term effects of beetroot juice ingestion.

Between sessions, repeatability during the first investigation was essential to enable determining measurement error across different sessions for the intervention of beetroot juice during the third investigation as it was essential to determine if any changes were greater than the associated measurement error of the assessment method.



### **3.3 Thesis experimental design**

The first investigation for this thesis was a repeatability study, and the aim was to quantify both within sessions and between sessions reliability and measurement error of ultrasound parameters (dependent variables) in measuring blood flow in the lower limb arteries of a cohort of 10 Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage PAD to establish the robustness of the measurement method before its utilisation in gathering data for the bigger sample participants in the second and third investigations. The principal investigator adopted a within-subjects and between sessions repeated measures design to establish within-session and between-session reliability and measurement error of ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the popliteal arteries, anterior tibial arteries, posterior tibial arteries and dorsalis pedis arteries. The principal investigator then imported the emerging robust ultrasound parameters from the first investigation for further analysis into the second investigation.

During the conduct of the first investigation, the principal investigator put measures and controls in place in the inclusion and exclusion criteria and the methodology to minimise bias such that the ultrasound parameter measurements which were made on the same subject depended on the within-subject standard deviations which were quantified as the measurement errors. The second aim of the first investigation was to establish if there were any significant or meaningful changes in dependent variables (ultrasound blood flow parameters) between sessions.

The second investigation of this thesis was a comparative cohort study and the aim was to determine the capability of the robust ultrasound parameters from the first investigation in demonstrating early-stage PAD on the blood flow of the popliteal arteries, anterior tibial arteries, and posterior tibial arteries of 35 Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients through comparison with 36 non-diabetic controls while the two groups were in comparable conditions.

The principal investigator allowed recruitment of the 10 diabetic patients from the first investigation into the second investigation of 35 diabetic patients. The principal investigator adopted a within-subjects repeated measures design to determine the within-session reliability of ultrasound parameters (dependent variables) to enable comparison between groups. Within-sessions, reliability was essential in this investigation since the principal investigator had established reliability only in the diabetic patients during the first investigation but not yet in the non-diabetic controls the second investigation. The principal investigator performed the ultrasound measurements in a cohort of Black-African participants in the age range of 18 - 70 years for both groups and those parameters which came out showing a significant difference between the two groups were interpreted as those able to demonstrate the outcome of early-stage PAD on lower limb blood flow and these were imported into the third investigation.

The third investigation of this thesis was a prospective quasi-experimental study and the aim was to determine if consumption of beetroot juice could result in meaningful changes in lower limb blood flow both within and between the two groups of participants imported from the second investigation using ultrasound parameters and blood pressure. Secondly, the third investigation aimed to identify the magnitude of any changes in blood flow after beetroot juice ingestion between individual time points within and between groups and also between the two groups across four-time points using ultrasound parameters and blood pressure.

The principal investigator adopted a within and between subjects repeated measures design to determine changes in the dependent variables both within and between groups respectively. Between-sessions reliability which was performed by the principal investigator in the second investigation was essential to enable the determining of measurement error across different sessions for the intervention of beetroot juice in the third investigation. This was essential since the principal investigator needed to determine if any changes

were greater than the associated measurement error of the assessment method.

This thesis design was rigorous since all in the three investigations, the principal investigator gathered the data prospectively such that the outcomes were unknown to her at the time of participants' enrollment. The principal investigator put the following measures and controls in place to minimise of bias and to increase the rigour of the thesis methodology;

- i) A strict inclusion and exclusion criteria for participants.
- ii) Establishment of the robustness of the measurement method before larger sample measurements.
- iii) Diet preparations by patients before measurements.
- iv) Prior relevant experience in vascular imaging by the principal investigator.
- v) Prior training of research assistants.
- vi) Blinding of the principal investigator.
- vii) Simple random sampling during participants' recruitment.

See sections 3.6 and 3.4 for more detail on the detail of the measures and controls which were put in place during the conduct of the three investigations.

### **3.4 Thesis inclusion and exclusion criteria**

The participants for this thesis were recruited by the trained research assistants from the Black-African ethnic group which made the majority population (98.6%) understudy at both research sites, thus it was feasible for them to obtain sample sizes which had been predetermined by the principal investigator. See section 3.5 on the recruitment plan for more detail. A homogenous Zimbabwean Black/African population enabled the eradication of the

potential counteracting variables which could have emanated from a sample of participants from different ethnic groups.

Mpilo Central hospital is a quaternary care centre in the Zimbabwean health delivery system and inside the diabetic clinic, there were many patients in various stages of PAD. This was so because in the past 10 years the initially existing referral system stopped working effectively such that patients were now seeking for any level of care (primary or secondary) at all health facility levels due to geographic convenience (Osika et al, 2010; Tapfumaneyi and Okello, 2014; National Health Strategy for Zimbabwe, 2007 – 2013).

The principal investigator put a control for the age limit for the recruited adult participants at 18 - 70 years, since the consenting age for adults in Zimbabwe is 18 years and also the fact that type 2 diabetes usually starts manifesting from adolescence onwards (Kaku, 2010; Bhatia et al., 2014). However, the age of the recruited participants was limited up to 70 years since there is evidence that there is an increased risk of late-stage PAD in subjects of 70 years and above (Macleod et al., 2008; Type 2 Diabetes in adults management (NG 28) NICE, 2015; Klabunde, 2007; Hernando and Conejero, 2007) such that the probability of getting a sample of participants with early-stage PAD in this category was low.

The principal investigator again put a measure to exclude pregnant participants from all the three stages of this thesis because prior evidence has shown that blood pressure decreases while systemic blood flow increases as a result of systemic vasodilation in pregnancy (Mahendru et al., 2014; Sanghavi and Rutherford, 2014), therefore there were bound to be inconsistencies in blood flow if the lower limbs of pregnant participants were to be measured together with non-pregnant participants. This exclusion resulted in minimisation of measurement error which could have emanated from inconsistent basal blood flow in the participants before the undertaking of the measurements. In

this thesis, therefore, all the patients of the childbearing age who were unsure of their last menstrual dates were excluded from the thesis.

A measure to exclude smokers and ex-smokers from the thesis was put in place by the principal investigator because there is a strong correlation between tobacco smoking and PAD (Hernando and Conejero, 2007; Klabunde, 2007), therefore it would not have been possible to get a representative sample of diabetic subjects with early-stage PAD amongst smokers and ex-smokers (Klabunde, 2007; Hernando and Conejero, 2007). This was done to reduce bias from the misclassification of exposure and outcomes which would have emanated if participants of different stages of PAD were to be recruited.

During the conduct of the three investigations of this thesis methodology, the research assistants utilised non-probability Convenience sampling (Glen, 2015) put in place by the principal investigator when recruiting participants for this thesis. Despite the disadvantage of inability to generalise study results to a wider population through convenience sampling (Glen, 2015), in this thesis, this sampling method appeared the most ideal one for recruiting the required sample of participants with the limited resources and budget which was allotted to it. The limited resources for this thesis again made it impossible to reach every member of the population of diabetic patients at Mpilo central hospital to afford them an equal chance at being selected. Again, this sampling method had a weakness of introducing selection bias of diabetic participants since the participants selected were those who were available at the diabetic clinic when recruitment was being carried out. Both groups of participants for this thesis were drawn from the same Zimbabwean Black/African population which was easily accessible during the gathering of data and there is a noted higher incidence of diabetes and its complications in this type of population (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016-2020).

### **3.5 Thesis recruitment strategy**

The recruitment of participants in this thesis was voluntary and participants were allowed to drop out anytime during the study if they so wished without them being inconvenienced in any way. A lapse time of at least twenty-four hours was allowed so that the participants could decide whether to participate or not. If willing to participate, the participants were to confirm by signing the consent forms, and this was stressed in the information sheets.

Diabetic patients with early-stage PAD for the first and second investigations of this thesis were recruited by the research assistants as they came to Mpilo central hospital's diabetic clinic during the weekdays when the clinic was open thus, from Tuesday to Thursday and permission had been granted by Mpilo central hospital board of ethics to allow this thesis to be carried out at their institute. The fact that this central hospital had a larger population of the Black-African patients with type 2 diabetes with the various stages of PAD, it became possible for the research assistants to recruit the required sample sizes which had been predetermined by the principal investigator. The principal investigator set the priority alpha at  $p \leq 0.05$  and the required sample size for the first investigation was 10 diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and for the second investigation, it was 71 participants consisting of one group of 35 diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and the second group of 36 non-diabetic controls and these two groups from the second investigation were later imported into the third investigation.

As each of the asymptomatic diabetic patients entered the physician's room for their usual consultation, the attending physician undertook the reactive hyperaemic test in the presence of the principal investigator and then indicated on the recruitment form if the patient was eligible to be categorised as having early-stage PAD. The form was then handed over to research assistants waiting outside, who upon checking the forms would recruit all ticked participants with early-stage PAD. The right leg for each diabetic participant

was recruited into the sample for the sake of consistency thus thirty-five legs were recruited.

Accordingly, the sample for the non-diabetic control group was feasibly recruited from the National University of Science and Technology volunteering staff and students through a mass advert which was designed by the principal investigator and sent to the mass email for the University staff and students. The two research assistants then recruited the volunteering staff and students who responded to the advert until a sample size of 36 -non-diabetic controls which had been predetermined by the principal investigator was achieved for the second investigation.

The research assistants utilised the Qdiabetes risk calculator (2015) to screen for the non-diabetic control group participants. Recruitment for participation in this control group was similarly voluntary just as was outlined for the diabetic participants and this was stressed in the advert which was a flight on the mass students' and staff members' website. The justification for having the National University of Science and Technology, Zimbabwe as the recruitment place for control group participants was because the place was close and convenient to the principal investigator researcher and to other institutes where the research was being carried out. The right leg for each participant in the control group was similarly recruited for the sake of consistency and 36 legs were recruited.

### **3.6 Patient preparation for all investigations**

Demographic data such as the socio-medical history of participants were gathered by the two research assistants using a validated Qdiabetes risk calculator. The research assistants simply asked the patients to tick boxes of the required information on the information sheets which had a language of their choice amongst the three main languages spoken in Zimbabwe which include English, Shona and Ndebele. The research assistants were not medical professionals themselves but nurse aides. See section 3.2 for more detail on the

research assistants. This measure minimised recall bias during the collection of socio-medical history since the research assistants were unfamiliar with the exposures and outcomes of this thesis.

The two research assistants instructed the diabetic patients to adopt a low nitrate vegetable diet and no meat or fish for three days before testing and they were told to fast six to twelve hours before the examination.

The research assistants instructed the patients to avoid alcohol at least forty-eight hours before the examination which was booked at eight o'clock in the morning at the diabetic clinic and the patients were advised not to take their prescribed diabetic and high blood pressure medications but to bring them on their appointment day. The justification why the principal investigator instructed the diabetic patients to avoid taking their medications in the morning was because the patients were made to fast 6 hours before undertaking blood flow and blood pressure measurements, thus they had a high chance of sliding into hypoglycaemia. However, the principal investigator later instructed diabetic patients to take their medications during the third investigation while ingesting beetroot juice to enable them to metabolise the small number of carbohydrates in the ingested beetroot juice and avoid destabilising their blood sugar levels.

Again the principal investigator later allowed the participants to take their blood pressure reducing medications after completing the third investigation after 210 minutes of ingesting beetroot juice. See section 6.4.2 in chapter 6 for more detail on this justification.

All these preparation measures were put in place by the principal investigator to minimise the effects of a nitrate-rich diet, a recent meal, alcohol and medication on the basal blood flow of the participants before the undertaking of blood flow measurements to reduce measurement error (all investigations) as well as avoiding the masking of the true effects of beetroot juice on blood flow (third investigation).



To check on compliance to prior preparation instructions by the participants the research assistants instructed the participants to diarise all the foods they had eaten three days before the undertaking of measurements and this enabled them to rebook participants who had failed to comply with prior dietary preparations.

All the control settings listed above-enabled minimisation of measurement error since in all the three investigations, participants needed to have a constant basal blood flow which was not influenced by the external factors controlled above. These measures then allowed the effects of early-stage PAD on blood flow during the first and second investigations, and the effects of beetroot juice intake on blood flow during the third investigation to be assessed with the reduced measurement error.

The research assistants gave the participants a refreshment of 100% fruit juice and a low sugar biscuit after completing the first investigation and also after completing the third investigation then allowed the participants to take their prescribed diabetic and blood pressure reducing medications (end of the first investigation, section 4.4.3) and their blood pressure reducing medications (third investigation, section 6.4.2). The principal investigator observed the participants for about 20 minutes before dismissing them to go home.

### **3.7 Body Mass Index and Ankle Brachial Index measurements**

The two research assistants measured and recorded the participants' weight and height and collated these findings on Microsoft excel sheets with anonymised codes assigned to each participant alongside the socio-medical history of each patient. The principal investigator later calculated Body Mass Index values for each anonymously coded patient using equation 5 as follows;

$$\text{Body Mass Index} = \frac{\text{weight}}{\text{height}^2} \quad 5$$

See appendix D which was used to collect data for Body Mass Index and Appendix F for the collated demographic raw data.

The principal investigator calculated Body Mass Index for the participants to enable documentation of their health status by measuring their body fat. However, Bell et al., (2018) showed that body mass index is not an accurate measure of total body fat since it does not distinguish fat from muscle or locate where the stored fat is in the body. Despite this weakness Body Mass Index was utilised to establish the general health status of participants in this thesis since the limitations of body mass index are mostly associated with athletic populations (Mitchell et al., 2014; Dickerson et al., 2011).

The supplying company representative for the automated blood pressure machine (*CareVue, Shenzhen, China*) performed calibration on it as per the manufacturer's specifications during commissioning before it was utilised by the principal investigator in this thesis for measuring Ankle Brachial Index and Blood pressure. See Figure 4 for more detail. The company representative inducted the principal investigator on how to carry out basic quality control tests for the blood pressure machine were as follows;

- i) Wiping the monitor weekly to remove dust and debris.
- ii) Checking and cleaning the filter weekly to remove dust and other particles ([www.heartland medical.com](http://www.heartlandmedical.com)).

The principal investigator performed Ankle Brachial Index for the two groups of participants after a supine rest of about 10 minutes and recorded the highest ipsilateral ankle pressure and subsequently divided it by the highest ipsilateral upper arm pressure. The principal investigator calculated the Ankle Brachial Index values for each participant which were then collated in Microsoft excel sheets with anonymised identification codes for each participant by the research assistants. See figure 4 for an illustration showing the measurement of blood pressure. In this thesis, the principal investigator performed the Ankle Brachial Index as, a parallel test to the ultrasound parameters' measurements. The upper arms and ankles blood pressure measurements were taken at a similar site on each participant.

The principal investigation performed Ankle Brachial Index measurements on the day of the ultrasound booking soon after the undertaking of blood tests in the laboratory which was located upstairs from the ultrasound private rooms. Blood tests to determine glycaemic control and renal function were important to establish the general health of the participants.



**Figure 4** *Principal Investigator measuring Blood pressure on the right upper arm with an automated blood pressure machine (CareVue, Shenzhen China). This was performed on both upper arms and both ankles of each participant (Current thesis).*

### **3.8 Duplex Ultrasound parameters measurements**

Qualitative assessment of the ultrasound scanner was done, (Goodsitt et al., 1988; Russel, 2014), before the assessment of the ultrasound parameters for repeatability. These qualitative assessments were done by a “Medical Physicist,” using a Brachytherapy Quality Assurance (QA) phantom (Model 045, Universal Medical Inc. Norwood, MA, USA) which was utilised to perform a quality assessment of the ultrasound scanner for this thesis. See appendix W for more detail. Though originally designed for trans-rectal ultrasound QA and

calibration of brachytherapy systems, in this thesis the phantom was utilised to test the 7.5 – 10.0 MHz probe to perform the following;

i) Internal grid assessment for testing lateral resolution and the axial resolution was done and the error margin after three trial measurements was 3% and 2% respectively reflecting the good performance of the ultrasound scanner. This quality control check for axial and lateral resolution (Goodsitt et al., 1988; Russel, 2014) was performed to reduce the error from measurements which could result from poor quality of ultrasound images which could have compromised the measurements for the three investigations.

The other basic quality control tests carried on the ultrasound scanner by the PhD advisor included physical and mechanical inspection, display monitor fidelity and image uniformity and the justification for carrying out this procedure was to reduce error in the ultrasound parameters measurements which could be due to a faulty scanner as well as prevention of any chances infection or electrical fault hazards (Goodsitt et al., 1988; Russel, 2014) affecting the participants during the study.

The ultrasound parameters measurements were similarly performed during the conduct of the three investigations by the principal investigator. However, specific modifications undertaken for each investigation stage are outlined within the methodology section of each investigation separately. The principal investigator performed ultrasound parameters measurements which included pulsatility index, peak systolic velocity, resistive index, vessel diameter inner to inner from an ultrasound machine (Mindray model Z5, Shenzhen, China) with a linear array probe which had a variable frequency of 7.5 – 10.0 MHz. The linear array probe utilised by the principal investigator has short wavelengths but high frequency which enabled high-resolution images during scanning for superficial structures like blood vessels (Hamments, 2014; Hwang, 2017). This justification was deducted from the wave equation (Hamments, 2014, Hwang,

2017) which relates wavelength to the speed and frequency of the ultrasound wave as follows in equation 6;

$$\text{ultrasound beam wavelength} = \frac{\text{Speed of sound in soft tissue}}{\text{ultrasound beam frequency}} \quad 6$$

Deducting from the equation it can be seen that the wavelength of the ultrasound beam is directly proportional to the speed of sound in soft tissue but inversely proportional to the frequency of the ultrasound beam. In this thesis, since the lower limb arteries to be examined were superficial structures, it, justified why the principal investigator chose the highest frequency linear probe of 7.5 - 10 MHz which was available for the ultrasound machine utilised in this thesis.

To ensure consistency the ultrasound parameters measurements were taken by the same rater (principal investigator) holding more than 5 years of experience in vascular ultrasound scanning. The principal investigator scanned, froze and measured the ultrasound parameters which included peak systolic velocity and pulsatility index from the still image of the spectral Doppler waveforms and the B-mode parameter which included vessel diameter inner to inner was measured from the still image of the longitudinal section of the popliteal arteries, anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries (Delis et al., 2000; Leoniuk et al., 2014). These measurements were performed three times for each participant and the mean value was recorded. The fact that the principal investigator held more than 5 years' experience in vascular imaging minimised performance bias during the undertaking of measurements and also the fact that a mean of three measurements was recorded also enabled minimisation of measurement error.

The principal investigator placed the ultrasound gel and then the linear probe over each artery for transverse scanning and then rotated 90° for the longitudinal scanning to enable the undertaking of Doppler and B mode measurements (Hwang, 2017; Eiberg et al., 2010).

The principal investigator sampled the blood flow for the arterial segments which include the popliteal arteries, anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries and dorsalis pedis arteries with B mode imaging, colour and then Doppler in the longitudinal section. The longitudinal section enabled the principal investigator to manipulate the ultrasound beam from the probe to be parallel to the blood flowing in the arteries thus enabling manoeuvring for a Doppler angle of less or equal to 60° which gives maximum Doppler shifts interpreted as the blood velocity on the Doppler spectral display (Hamments, 2014; Hwang, 2017). The principal investigator avoided sampling in the transverse section since it makes the ultrasound beam to be at 90° angle which gives zero Doppler shifts as the ultrasound beam will be traversing the arterial blood flow at right angles (Hamments, 2014; Hwang 2017). The principal investigator utilised the Doppler equation which identifies all factors affecting the magnitude of the Doppler shift as follows in equation 7;

$$FD = \frac{2ftv(\cos \theta)nx}{c} \quad 7$$

From equation 1,) *FD* refers to Doppler shift frequency (positive in arteries and negative in veins),

ii) 2 is a constant and can be ignored,

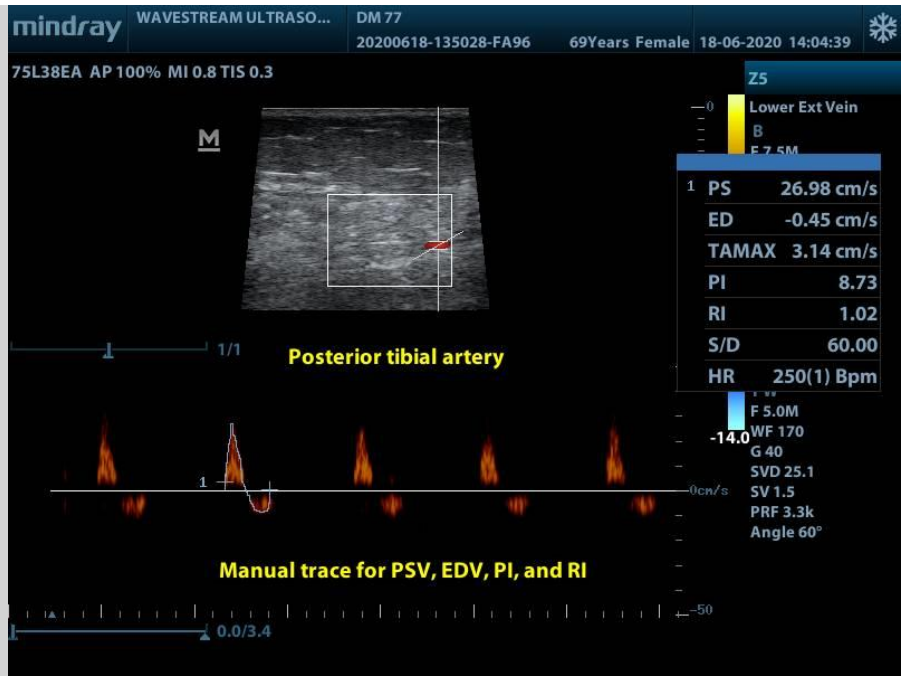
iii) Transmitted frequency (*FT*) is directly proportional to Doppler shift frequency (*FD*).

iv) velocity of blood (*v*) is directly proportional Doppler shift frequency (*FD*) and (*C*) speed of sound which is 1.540 m/s and a constant (Hamments, 2014; Hwang 2017).

Deducting the Doppler equation above the principal investigator had to make sure that Doppler angle ( $\theta$ ) was less or equal to 60 to enable a cosine value that was high and which was directly proportional to high Doppler shifts which were also directly proportional to high blood velocity.

The principal investigator made the colour box as small as possible and placed the sample volume cursor within an arterial lumen to enable recording of more accurate and maximum Doppler shift frequencies. (Harrington, 2012; Chavhan et al., 2008). The Doppler spectrum then displayed the blood flow velocities in the y-axis in cm/s against time in seconds in the x-axis. See figure 8 for more detail on the correct placement of the sample volume cursor.

The pulsed spectral Doppler parameters including pulsatility index and resistive index were calculated automatically after the principal investigator measured the peak systolic velocity and end-diastolic velocity on the displayed spectral Doppler waveform in each arterial segment for each participant. See figure 5 for more detail of the measurement of Doppler parameters.



**Figure 5** Measurement of Doppler ultrasound parameters within the posterior tibial artery performed by the principal investigator (Current thesis).

The principal investigator performed the measurements three times for each of the ultrasound parameters and recorded them under an anonymous code representing each participant. The scanning site for the right popliteal arteries was in the popliteal fossa region and the approach used to access it is shown

in figure 6 and the arterial anatomy displayed in this position is shown in a Computed Tomography (CT) image in figure 8. In figure 6, the principal investigator positioned the patient supine and extended their right leg laterally and slightly abducted their knee joint medially.

The principal investigator placed the linear probe and sonar transmission gel over the popliteal region of the ankle and the Doppler scanning angle was maintained at  $\leq 60^\circ$  (Hwang, 2017; Eiberg et al., 2010). The principal investigator placed the probe over this region transversely to view the popliteal artery and vein lying side by side as confirmed by colour Doppler and, then rotated the probe  $90^\circ$  in-order to view the longitudinal section of the popliteal artery. The principal investigator gathered pulsed spectral Doppler and B-mode measurements for blood flow in the longitudinal section of the popliteal artery (Hwang, 2017; Eiberg et al., 2010; Leoniuk et al., 2014; Moneta et al., 1992).

The principal investigator undertook the scanning for the right anterior tibial arteries at its palpable pulse at the neck of the ankle slightly in front of the lateral malleolus (Hwang, 2017; Eiberg et al., 2010; Leoniuk et al., 2014). See figure 7 for more detail. The right dorsalis pedis arteries were accessed in the groove between the first and second phalanges while the right posterior tibial artery was accessed behind the medial malleolus (Hwang, 2017; Eiberg et al., 2010; Leoniuk et al., 2014) by the principal investigator and the ultrasound parameters were measured in these regions accordingly.





**Figure 6** Principal investigator demonstrating positioning technique for accessing the popliteal artery during ultrasound scanning (Current thesis).



**Figure 7** Principal investigator demonstrating the scanning technique for accessing the right anterior tibial artery during ultrasound scanning. (Current thesis).

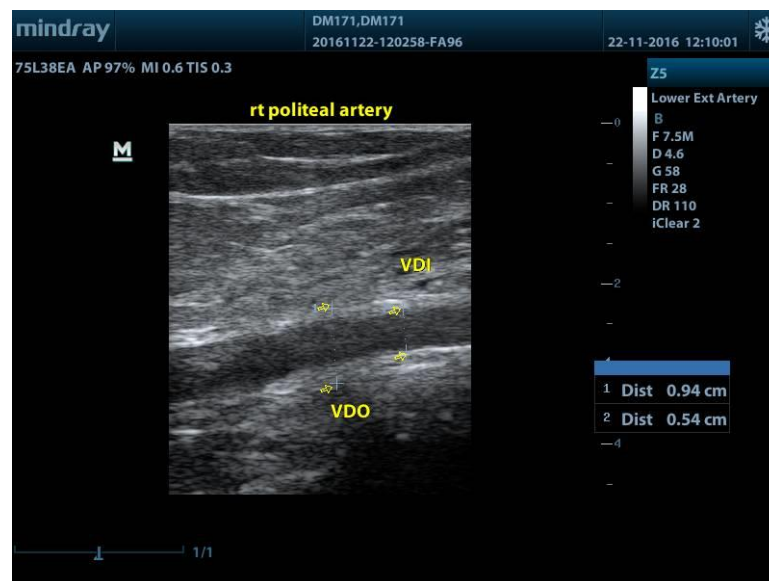
***Figure 8 removed due to copyright restrictions***

**Figure 8** *Computed Tomography Angiography image showing the arterial anatomy displayed with the patient supine and the leg extended, mildly abducted in the lateral position and slightly flexed (Hwang, 2017).*

The principal investigator-assessed vessel diameter was performed in the greyscale image in the longitudinal section of the artery and obtained its measurements by placing the callipers on the inner to inner walls of the artery. In figure 12 vessel diameter inner to inner is labelled as VDI with a measurement of 0.54 cm in diameter. The principal investigator repeated this measurement

process thrice for each vessel segment and recorded the mean value of the three measurements (Delis et al., 2000; Leoniuk et al., 2014).

The principal investigator did not include the vessel diameter outer to outer in this thesis, because prior evidence has shown vessel diameter inner to inner as more reproducible than vessel diameter outer to the outer (Hartshorne et al., 2011; Borgbderg et al., 2018). See figure 9 for more detail.



**Figure 9** Measurements for vessel diameter inner to inner of the longitudinal section of a B-mode image of a popliteal artery segment, and vessel diameter outer to outer measurement also displayed (Current thesis).

### 3.9 Minimisation of measurement error during thesis data collection procedures

Quality control tests such as assessment of lateral resolution and axial resolution were carried out on the ultrasound machine by the PhD advisor to establish the machine's consistency in measurements during B-mode imaging to reduce the magnitude of error imaging measurements. This means that the magnitude of error in this investigation was solely from the measurement process itself and not from a faulty ultrasound scanner. A within sessions and between sessions repeatable study design was utilised leading to a mean value of three

measurements of a parameter being recorded for each participant and this reduced the magnitude of measurement error.

### **3.10 Internal and external validity**

The rigour in the design of each investigation of this thesis relied on participants' adherence to the rigorous diet restrictions outside the clinical set up before undergoing the measurements for blood flow, Ankle Brachial Index and blood pressure within clinical settings. However, measures which were put in place by the principal investigator for checking adherence to prior preparation diet made the three investigations to have high internal validity, and findings could be generalised to the Black /African diabetic population of Zimbabwe with early-stage PAD. However, external validity was limited because the strict inclusion and exclusion criteria put in place by the principal investigator did not allow recruitment of a diverse sample of participants belonging to other ethnic groups which generally represents the population of Zimbabwe.

## Chapter 4 - First Investigation

### Abstract

**Repeatability of ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the lower limb arteries of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD.**

**Keywords:** *Doppler ultrasound imaging, Intraclass correlation coefficient, measurement error, B-mode vascular imaging*

**Objectives:** i) To determine the repeatability of ultrasound parameters in measuring lower limb blood flow in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD.

ii) To determine whether any differences in, dependent variables between sessions are significant or meaningful.

**Methods:** Ultrasound parameters consisting of peak systolic velocity (PSV), pulsatility index (PI), resistive index (RI) and vessel diameter inner to inner (VDI) were assessed for repeatability in measuring blood flow in the popliteal arteries (PA), anterior tibial arteries (ATA) and posterior tibial arteries (PTA) of 10 asymptomatic Black-African diabetic patients [3 males, 7 females; mean age - 49.5 (13.8) years; mean HbA<sub>1c</sub> - 5.9 (0.7)%; mean - ABI 1.1 (0.1) and median BMI - 29.5 (24-33.7)] with early-stage PAD. Both within sessions and between sessions reliability intraclass correlation coefficients (ICC), percentage coefficient of variation (%CV), standard error of measurement (SEM) and smallest detectable difference (SDD) were calculated for each parameter. Additionally, the paired *t*-test was performed to establish if any differences in, dependent variables between sessions were significant.

**Results:** All ultrasound parameters showed very good ( $ICC \geq 0.8$ ;  $0.6 - 0.9$ , 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC \leq 1.0$ ;  $1.0 - 1.0$ , 95% CI) reliability and acceptably low variability ( $\leq 5.6\%$ CV) both within and between sessions. Additionally, there were no significant or meaningful differences ( $p \geq 0.06$ ;  $t \geq -2.1$ ) between sessions for all the variables except VDI-PTA ( $p = 0.03$ ;  $t = -2.5$ ) and ATA ( $p = 0.02$ ;  $t = -2.9$ ). The SEM was acceptably low ( $SEM \leq 1.1$ ) with low SDD ( $SDD < 10\%$ ) for all parameters other than VDI-PTA ( $SDD = 13.6\%$ ).

**Conclusions:** Ultrasound parameters were repeatable in measuring blood flow in the lower limb arteries of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and the associated measurement error was acceptably low, except VDI.

Correspondence to: Josephine S Tityiwe, National University of Science and Technology, Radiography Department, Corner Cecil/Gwanda Road, P. O. Box AC 939 Ascot, Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. Email: [josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw](mailto:josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw)/ [J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk](mailto:J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk)

## 4.1 Introduction

Prior evidence classified asymptomatic PAD as stage 1 by Fontaine et al., (1954) which refers to incomplete occlusion of arteries, while Rutherford et al., (1997) classified asymptomatic PAD as grade zero with additional objective data of being confirmed by a normal reactive hyperaemic test or treadmill test (Hardman et al., 2014). However, the classification for asymptomatic PAD by Fontaine et al., (1954) had a weakness of lacking objective data to rigorously rule out the probability of symptomatic PAD (Hardman et al., 2014). Prior evidence (Hirsch et al., 2005; Rooke et al., 2011; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016), has recommended the utilisation of Ankle Brachial Index to quantify PAD and an Ankle Brachial Index value of greater or equal to 0.9 concluded to indicate symptomatic PAD. However, a numerical value of the Ankle Brachial Index is not able to provide the clinicians with the objective information on the clinical severity of the disease. This investigation aimed to contribute to the filling of this gap in the literature by determining the repeatability of duplex ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. The findings of this investigation could provide evidence for the drafting of management guidelines for diabetic patients with duplex ultrasound parameters whilst still in the secondary care of the Zimbabwean health delivery system.

In this investigation, the principal investigator combined ultrasound parameters including peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner into a diagnostic protocol and tested them for repeatability in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. Although there is evidence showing that these ultrasound parameters have been widely used in the assessments of lower limb arteries blood flow for late-stage PAD (Eiberg et al., 2010; Andersen, 2010; Chen et al., 2015) this is the first time that these parameters have been combined this way. No prior studies which utilised ultrasound

parameters to assess blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD were established during the writing up of this thesis. This investigation, therefore, aimed to provide evidence justifying the utilisation of duplex ultrasound parameters to assess blood flow in Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD, which was objectively confirmed through a normal reactive hyperaemic test (Rutherford et al., 1997; Hardman et al., 2014).

## **4.2 Aims**

- i) To determine the within and between sessions reliability and measurement error of the ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD.
- ii) To determine if there were any significant or meaningful changes in, dependent variables (ultrasound blood parameters) between sessions.

### **4.2.1 Research Questions**

- i) Can the ultrasound parameters repeatably measure blood flow in the lower limb arteries of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD?
- ii) Are the differences in, dependent variables between sessions significant or meaningful?

## 4.3 Methodology

### 4.3.1 Design

The design for this investigation is outlined in section 3.3 of this thesis while in this investigation, the ultrasound parameters measurements were made by the same instrument (same sonar machine), same rater (principal investigator) under identical conditions in the two sessions. The principal investigator performed these measurements within a short lapse period of only 1 week (Scanlon, 2012), to avoid any probable changes in the participants' health state which could have altered the responses they elicited during first session measurements (Kimberlin, 2008; Shuttleworth, 2009). In this case, the lapse period of one week between the measurements sessions would not have allowed a significant accumulation of PAD which could alter basal blood flow in the participants' lower limb arteries. This measure enabled minimisation of measurement error between sessions.

### 4.3.2 Participants

The principal investigator, assessed both within and between sessions reliability and measurement error to determine if ultrasound parameters could repeatably measure blood flow in thirty arterial segments of the right lower limbs of 10 Black-African diabetic patients [*3 males, 7 females; mean age - 49.5 (13.8) years; mean HbA<sub>1c</sub> - 5.86 (0.7) %; mean - ABI 1.1 (0.1) and median BMI - 29.5 (24-33.7)*] with early-stage PAD. All the participants in this investigation provided written informed consent for participation and the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe and Salford ethics board approved the study.

The principal investigator's justification for the inclusion and exclusion criteria for the participants is outlined in section 3.4 in the methods section for this thesis, while the prior patient preparation requirements are outlined in section 3.6 in chapter 3 the methods section.



The principal investigator utilised the classification for early-stage PAD by Rutherford et al., (1997), “the asymptomatic grade zero” (Hardman et al., 2014), in the randomised recruitment of the 10 diabetic participants from Mpilo central hospital's diabetic clinic in the city of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. Participants who did not illicit a decrease or who elicited a small decrease in ankle blood pressure at rest following reactive hyperaemia tests by the diabetic clinic-based physician were included. All the diabetic patients who did not qualify to be categorised as having early-stage PAD according to the inclusion criteria were no longer eligible for this investigation but were left to continue with their care with the physician in the diabetic clinic. Therefore, the principal investigator highlighted this important instruction in the information sheets given to the patients before consenting to participate in this investigation to ensure that non-qualifying patients would not be confused and discontinue their routine treatments. This process enabled minimisation of bias due to misclassification of exposure and outcomes because the rigorous screening of diabetic patients with the reactive hyperaemic test enabled the selection of participants with early-stage PAD (the exposure factor) while those in later stages of PAD were excluded.

## **4.4 Data collection procedures**

### **4.4.1 Reactive Hyperaemic testing and sampling**

The research assistants utilised the inclusion and exclusion criteria in section 3.4 of chapter 3 to randomly recruit volunteering participants who were to undergo reactive hyperaemic testing in the physician's room at the diabetic clinic.

The research assistants assigned the recruited volunteering participants with anonymous identification codes and allowed them 10 minutes rest in the diabetic clinic to enable them to get a stable heart rate before undergoing hyperaemic testing in the physician's room. The research assistants then

escorted each of the volunteering participants into the physician's room where the physician performed reactive hyperaemic testing on the right leg of each of them in the presence of the principal investigator. Despite its documented weakness of causing mild discomfort in diabetic patients, the principal investigator chose the reactive hyperaemic test for this investigation since, its equipment was affordable within the budget of this thesis compared to the treadmill test equipment (Higashi et al., 2001; Philpott and Anderson, 2007).

The research assistants booked the ten participants who were categorised as having early-stage PAD on day 5 to undergo blood tests in the laboratory and ultrasound measurements at a private ultrasound imaging centre in the city of Bulawayo. The research assistants assigned the recruited participants with anonymous identification codes and put them on detailed prior preparation instructions to address their diet for three days and absconding their medication first thing in the morning before undertaking of blood tests and ultrasound measurements. See section 3.6 in chapter 3 for more detail.

#### **4.4.2 Blood testing for renal function and glycaemic control**

Blood tests were done first at 8 0'clock in the morning of day 5 in the laboratory and ultrasound measurements were done soon after blood tests downstairs in the same building by the principal investigator. The participants' blood was tested for glycated haemoglobin levels to establish glycaemic control in the recruited participants. Again, the blood was tested for Urea and Creatinine levels which were utilised to calculate the Estimated Glomerular Filtration Rate to establish whether the recruited participants indeed had minimal renal damage as supposedly expected in early-stage PAD. The principal investigator used these blood tests as medical history demographic markers confirming that the prior reactive hyperaemic test had been effectively utilised to recruit diabetic patients with early-stage PAD as reflected by effective glycaemic control and minimal renal damage.

See appendices E1 to E4 for evidence of the blood test results undertaken on the diabetic patients in the laboratory. The blood test results were available by the laboratory the following day (Day 6) and the research assistants stratified the recruited 10 anonymised coded participants with their blood test results while this was blinded to the principal investigator to minimise recall bias.

#### **4.4.3 Doppler ultrasound parameters and Ankle Brachial Index measurements**

The quality control tests undertaken for the ultrasound scanner which included internal grid assessment for testing lateral and axial resolution for the 7.5-10.0 MHz probe are outlined in section 3.8 while the quality control tests for the Blood pressure machine which included calibration are outlined in section 3.7.

All the recruited 10 volunteers were escorted from the laboratory by the research assistants to the ultrasound room downstairs on day 5. In the ultrasound room, the participants were assessed in quiet, calm conditions at standard room temperature of about 23 - 25°C by a thermometer.

Weight and height of the participants were measured by the research assistants who then stratified it with the participants' anonymised codes on Microsoft Excel sheets. The principal investigator later calculated the body mass index for the recorded weight and height of each patient and stratified it alongside the anonymised codes. See section 3.7 of chapter 3 for more detail on body mass index calculations which were undertaken.

The principal investigator performed Ankle Brachial Index as outlined in section 3.7 of chapter 3 on the 10 participants and the research assistants recorded and collated the Ankle Brachial Index results for each patient with the anonymised codes in Microsoft Excel sheets.

Again, the principal investigator performed B-mode imaging and measured vessel diameter inner to inner followed by duplex ultrasound parameters measurements for peak systolic velocity and end-diastolic velocity which

enabled automatic calculation of resistive index and pulsatility index by the ultrasound machine. See section 3.8 for more detail on the scanning technique undertaken by the principal investigator.

The research assistants gave the participants some refreshments before dismissing them to go home with bookings and prior preparation instructions (Section 3.6) to be followed before retesting by the principal investigator after 1 week.

Personalised contact was maintained by research assistants with patients through prompt text messages and telephone calls to remind patients of the prior dietary preparations before their appointment for session 2 duplex ultrasound measurements. This measure enabled the minimisation of transfer bias (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010) between the two sessions.

The quality control tests for the ultrasound scanner (section 3.8) which were done before the undertaking of session 1 were repeated before the undertaking of session 2.

During the second session, the demographic data and Ankle Brachial Index findings of the diabetic patients were simply imported from the first session, while the blood tests were not repeated since they were simply demographic markers confirming early-stage PAD which had already been confirmed through prior reactive hyperaemic testing.

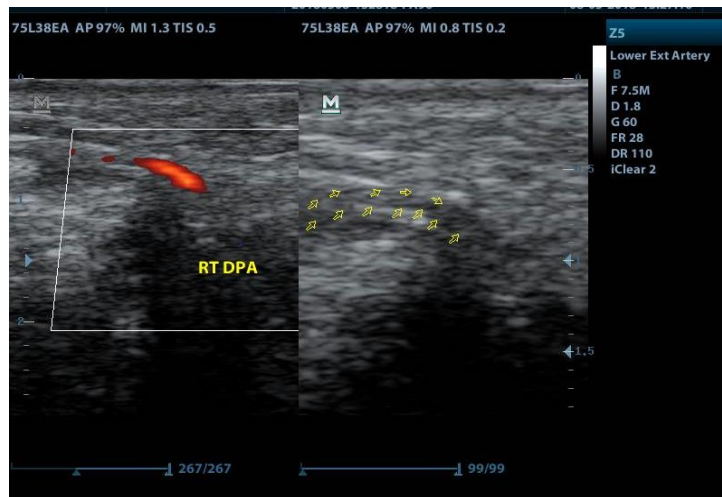
The principal investigator repeated the duplex ultrasound measurements which were done in session 1 after one week (Scanlon, 2012) as outlined in section 3.8 of this thesis to avoid incurring any probable changes in the patients' health state which could alter the responses which they had initially elicited during session 1 measurements (Kimberlin, 2008), such as progression of PAD if re-testing were to be done after a long time frame.

The principal investigator was blinded to the results of the first session measurements while performing the second session measurements and the research assistants documented the archived measurements for the first and second sessions. Thus, each time the principal investigator scanned and stored the data in the archives of the sonar machine the research assistants later collected the data and inputted it into simple excel tables tallying the scan findings of each patient with their session 1 findings. This process minimised recall bias which could have occurred if the principal investigator collated the data findings (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010).

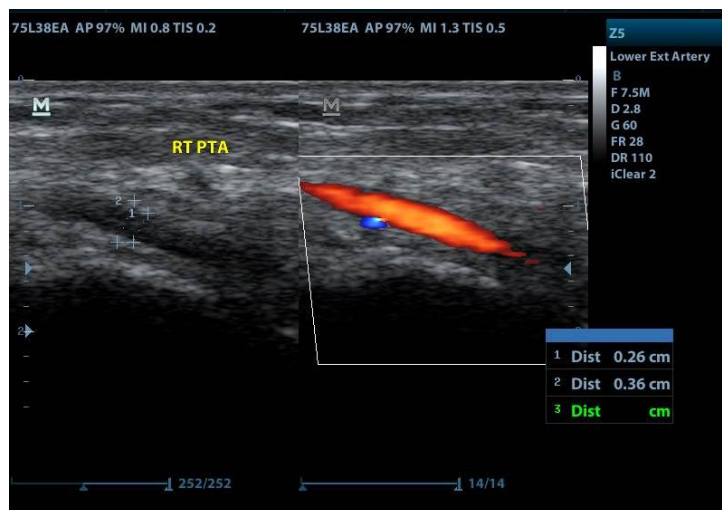
In this investigation, the shorter time frame between sessions 1 and 2 minimised the likeliness of patients moving away from the research site in pursuit of other personal reasons, See section 4.3.1 for more detail on the justification for this shorter time frame.

#### **4.4.4 Decision making during data collection**

During the collection of data for this investigation, the principal investigator discovered that the longitudinal section of the dorsalis pedis arteries borders was not so clear or definite to allow repeatable and consistent measurements of vessel diameter inner to inner when compared to the posterior tibial artery, anterior tibial artery and popliteal artery vessels. See figures 10 and 11 for the detailed illustration. Therefore, the principal investigator decided to exclude the assessment of the dorsalis pedis artery preliminarily since all the ultrasound parameters making up the diagnostic protocol in this investigation were to be assessed for repeatability in measuring blood flow in the lower limb arteries. The principal investigator then focussed on assessing the popliteal arteries, anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries.



**Figure 10** longitudinal section of the right dorsalis pedis and the inner to inner borders of the artery not so clear in the B - mode image to the right (Current thesis).



**Figure 11** longitudinal section of the posterior tibial artery and the inner to inner borders of the artery clearly shown allowing the measurements to be consistent in the B-mode image to the left (Current thesis).

## 4.5 Statistical analyses

The principal investigator utilised the Shapiro-Wilks test (Shapiro and Wilks, 1965) to check for normality of the demographic data which included the diabetic patients' characteristics before further analysis of the data from the ultrasound parameters measurements. The justification for utilising the Shapiro-Wilks test by the principal investigator was because statistical methods are more precise in detecting normality than graphical methods since actual probabilities that the sample was drawn from a normal population are calculated besides also being more sensitive in detecting non-normality in smaller samples of  $n < 100$  (Zaiontz, 2013-2017). See table 2 for information on the demographic data for the first investigation.

The principal investigator conducted all analyses in SPSS (Version 16.0; SPSS, Inc., IL, USA) and then computed firstly the Intraclass correlation coefficient (ICC) values from within sessions single measurements for each ultrasound parameter which they performed thrice to enable the calculation of ICC for within-session reliability with the associated 95% confidence interval and secondly, the principal investigator calculated the mean of the three trials of day one and the mean of the three trials on day two and computed them to enable the calculation of ICC for between-sessions reliability with its associated 95% confidence interval. The principal investigator then classified the ICC as follows; i) good = 0.60 - 0.74; ii) very good = 0.75 - 0.89 and iii) excellent  $\geq 0.90$ , based on the lower bound confidence interval (Koo and Li, 2016). An *a priori* alpha level was set at  $p \leq 0.05$  (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010; Karras, 1997). The principal investigator did this in a bid to try and answer the first research question for this investigation which sought to establish if the ultrasound parameters could repeatably measure blood flow in the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD. The ICC parameter used by the principal investigator as a within and between sessions reliability correlation to quantify repeatability of the ultrasound parameters in this investigation had a

weakness of showing a correlation only within sessions not between sessions (days), again if a measure increased or decreased by the same magnitude in all subjects then the ICC value may indicate that the measure is reliable, even though there could be a significant and meaningful change between sessions (days) (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010; Karras, 1997). Therefore, the principal investigator utilised the paired *t*-test (XU et al., 2017; Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010) to determine whether there was statistical evidence suggesting that the mean difference between the paired measurements of the two sessions was significantly different from zero or not thus demonstrating the robustness of the measuring instrument. The hypothesis utilised here by the principal investigator was that there was no significant difference between the paired measurements of the two sessions (days). Therefore, a statistically significant difference in the ultrasound parameters measurements between sessions would thus mean that the measurements were not stable over the two sessions. The principal investigator did this in a bid to try and answer the second research question of this investigation which sought to determine if there were any significant differences in dependent variables (ultrasound blood flow parameters) between sessions.

The principal investigator did not utilise Cohen's *d* weighting since they measured the same sample of diabetic patients under the same conditions over the two sessions, thus the samples were dependent.

The principal investigator quantified the variability in this investigation which could have been due to physiological differences between sessions/ days as a percentage coefficient of variation (%CV) to establish the variability of the ultrasound parameters amongst individuals, the mean and standard deviations (SDs) across the three trials for each individual were calculated then percentage coefficient of variation (%CV) for each individual was calculated and expressed as an average for the 10 participants. However, to establish the variability of the ultrasound parameters measurements between the two visiting sessions, the principal investigator calculated the mean (SDs) across the



average for session one and two and then calculated the %CV for session one and session two. Then the principal investigator put good reliability in this investigation at an upper limit of <10%CV, thus in comparison with previously established %CV values reporting good reliability (Thomas et al., 2015; Cormack et al., 2008; Sheppard et al., 2011).

The principal investigator calculated the standard error of measurement (SEM) between sessions using the following formula in equation 8;

$$SEM = SD (first\ observed) \times \sqrt{1 - ICC (first\ observed)}, \quad 8$$

Accordingly, the principal investigator calculated the smallest detectable difference (SDD) between sessions to determine the associated magnitude of measurement error using the following formula in equation 9;

$$SDD = Z\ score\ (95\% \ CI) \times SEM \times \sqrt{2} \quad \text{thus } SDD = 1.96 \times SEM \times \sqrt{2} \quad 9$$

(Lee et al., 2013; Thomas et al., 2015; Sheppard et al., 2011).

## 4.6 Results

### 4.6.1 Demographic findings

In a cohort of 10 Black-African participants with early-stage PAD, 3 (30%) were males and 7 (70%) were females (Table 2). The demographic results showed that glycated haemoglobin levels, age and the Ankle Brachial Index were normally distributed, thus the principal investigator analysed them as means (SD)s, while the Body Mass Index and Estimated Glomerular Filtration rate were not normally distributed thus, these the principal investigator analysed as median interquartile ranges (IQR)s (Table 2).

**Table 2 Descriptive statistics for demographic findings for a cohort of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD, (n = 10).**

Variable	Normality test p-value	Mean (SD)	Median (IQR)
EGFR	0.0		105.0 (93.0 -116.0) ml/min/1.73 m <sup>2</sup>
HbA <sub>1c</sub>	0.6	6.0 (0.7)%	
BMI	0.0		30.0 (24.0 – 34.0)
Age	0.8	50.0 (14.0) years	
ABI	0.9	1.1 (0.1)	

#### **4.6.2 The Popliteal artery (PA) findings**

Peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner showed very good to excellent reliability both within and between sessions with acceptably low variability both within and between sessions and an acceptably low Smallest Detectable Difference (SDD%) (Table 3a) Additionally, the difference between sessions for measurements for all the ultrasound parameters was equal to zero and not significant (Table 3b).

**Table 3a** Descriptive and reliability statistics of ultrasound parameters in the popliteal artery (PA) (n= 10).

	Mean (SD)		ICC (95% CI)		% CV		Measurement error	
Variable	Session 1	Session 2	Within session	Between sessions	Within sessions	Between sessions	SEM	SDD (SDD %)
PSV - PA	59.3 (9.0) cm/s	60.0 (8.4) cm/s	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	0.1%	0.3%	0.0	0.0 (0.0%)
PI -PA	6.0 (1.4)	6.0 (1.3)	0.9 (0.8 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	0.1%	0.9%	0.1	0.4 (6.6%)
RI-PA	1.0 (0.0)	1.0 (0.0)	0.9 (0.7 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	0.3%	0.5%	0.0	0.0 (3.0%)
VDI-PA	0.5 (0.1) cm	0.5 (0.1) cm	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	0.1%	0.5%	0.0	0.0 (0.0%)
SD = standard deviation; ICC = intraclass correlation coefficient; %CV = percentage coefficient of variation; SDD = smallest detectable difference; SEM = standard error of measurement; n = sample size. PSV = peak systolic velocity; PI = pulsatility index; RI = resistive index; VDI = vessel diameter inner to inner; PA = popliteal artery								

**Table 3b** Descriptive and between sessions comparisons of ultrasound parameters in the Popliteal Arteries (n = 10)

Vessel parameter	Mean (SD) session 1	Mean(SD) session 2	Mean difference	t- value	Degrees of freedom	2 tailed p-value	95% CI day 1	95% CI day 2
PSV-PA	59.3 (8.0) cm/s	60.0 (9.0) cm/s	-0.3	-2.1	9	0.1	53.0; 66.0	53.3; 66.0
PI – PA	6 (2.0)	5.0 (1.3)	0.1	0.3	9	0.8	4.9; 7.0	5; 7.0
RI-PA	1.0 (0.0)	1.0 (0.0)	0.0	1.4	9	0.2	1.0; 1.0	1.0; 1.0
VDI – PA	0.5 (0.1) cm	0.5 (0.1) cm	0.0	1.5	9	0.2	0.4; 0.6	0.4; 0.6
SD= standard deviation; t-value = t- test statistic; CI = confidence interval; n = sample size; PSV = peak systolic velocity; PI = pulsatility index; RI = resistive index; VDI = vessel diameter inner to inner; PA = popliteal artery								

#### **4.6.3 The anterior tibial artery (ATA) Findings**

Peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner showed very good to excellent reliability both within and between sessions and acceptably low variability both within and between sessions and the associated Smallest Detectable Difference was acceptably low (Table 4a). Additionally, the difference between days of measurements for all the ultrasound parameters was equal to zero and not significant except vessel diameter inner to inner which showed a significant difference between sessions (Table 4b).

**Table 4a** Descriptive statistics and within and between sessions reliability of ultrasound parameters in the anterior tibial artery (ATA) (n = 10).

	Mean (SD)		ICC (95%CI)		%CV			
Variable	Session 1	Session 2	Within session	Between sessions	Within sessions	Between sessions	SEM	SDD (SDD %)
PSV - ATA	44.4 (9.2) cm/s	44.4 (9.0) cm/s	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.1%	0.1%	0.0	0.0 (0.0%)
PI - ATA	7.9 (2.1)	7.8 (1.8)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	0.7%	0.6%	0.0	0.0 (0.0%)
RI - ATA	1.0 (0.1)	1.0 (0.1)	1.0 (0.9 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	0.3%	0.9%	0.0	0.0 (3.0%)
VDI - ATA	0.2 (0.0) cm	0.2 (0.0) cm	0.8 (0.6 – 0.9)	1.0 (0.9 - 1.0)	5.6%	3.6%	0.00	0.0 (0.0%)
SD = standard deviation; ICC = intraclass correlation coefficient; %CV = percentage coefficient of variation; SDD = smallest detectable difference; SEM = standard error of measurement; PSV = peak systolic velocity, PI = pulsatility index; RI = resistive index; VDI = vessel diameter inner to inner								

**Table 4b** Descriptive statistics and between sessions comparisons of ultrasound parameters in the anterior tibial arteries (n = 10)

Vessel parameter	Mean (SD) Session 1	Mean (SD) session 2	Mean difference	t- value	Degrees of freedom	2 tailed p-value	95% CI session 1	95% CI session 2
PSV - ATA	44.4 (9.6)	44.4 (9.3)	-0.0	-0.2	9	0.9	37.5; 51.2	37.7; 51.1
PI – ATA	7.9 (2.1)	7.8 (1.9)	0.1	0.5	9	0.6	6.4; 9.4	6.5; 9.2
RI - ATA	1.0 (0.1)	1.0 (0.1)	0.0	1.3	9	0.2	0.9; 1.1	0.9; 1.1
VDI - ATA	0.2 (0.0)	0.2 (0.0)	-0.0	<b>-2.9</b>	9	<b>0.0</b>	0.2; 0.2	0.2; 0.2
SD= standard deviation; t-value = t- test statistic; CI = confidence interval; n = sample size; PSV = peak systolic velocity, PI = pulsatility index; RI = resistive index; VDI = vessel diameter inner to inner.								

#### **4.6.4 The posterior tibial artery (PTA) findings**

Peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner showed very good to excellent reliability and acceptably low variability both within and between sessions and the associated Smallest Detectable Difference was acceptably low except for vessel diameter inner to inner where Smallest Detectable Difference was unacceptably high (table 5a). Additionally, the difference between days of measurements for all the ultrasound parameters was equal to zero and not significant except for vessel diameter inner to inner which showed a significant difference between sessions (Table 5b).



**Table 5a** Descriptive statistics and within and between sessions reliability of ultrasound parameters in the posterior tibial artery (PTA) (n = 10).

	Mean (SD)		ICC (95% CI)		%CV			
Variable	Session 1	Session 2	Within session	Between sessions	Within sessions	Between sessions	SEM	SDD (SDD %)
PSV-PTA	39.8 (11) cm/s	39.7 (11) cm/s	0.9 (0.8 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.7%	0.1%	1.1	3.0 (7.6%)
PI - PTA	5.8 (1.4)	5.8 (1.3)	1.0 (0.9 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	3.9%	0.3%	0.1	0.4 (6.6%)
RI - PTA	1.1 (0.2)	1.1 (0.1)	0.9 (0.8 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	3.6%	0.6%	0.0	0.1 (5.9%)
VDI - PTA	0.2 (0.1) cm	0.2 (0.0) cm	1.0 (0.9 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	4.8%	2.3%	0.0	<b>0.0 (13.6%)</b>
SD = standard deviation; ICC = intraclass correlation coefficient; %CV = percentage coefficient of variation; SDD = smallest detectable difference; SEM = standard error of measurement; PSV = peak systolic velocity, PI = pulsatility index; RI = resistive index; VDI = vessel diameter inner to inner.								

**Table 5b** Descriptive statistics and between sessions comparisons of ultrasound parameters in the posterior tibial arteries ( $n = 10$ )

Vessel parameter	Mean (SD) Session 1	Mean (SD) Session 2	Mean difference	t- value	Degrees of freedom	2 tailed p-value	95% CI session 1	95% CI session 2
PSV-PTA	39.8 (11.3) cm/s	39.7 (11.1) cm/s	-0.1	0.3	9	0.8	31.7; 47.9	31.8; 47.6
PI-PTA	5.9 (1.4)	5.8 (1.4)	0.0	0.3	9	0.8	4.9; 6.8	4.8; 6.8
RI-PTA	1.1 (0.2)	1.1 (0.1)	0.0	0.5	9	0.6	1.0; 1.2	1.0; 1.1
VDI - PTA	0.2 (0.1)	0.2 (0.1)	-0.0	<b>-2.5</b>	9	<b>0.0</b>	0.2; 0.3	0.2; 0.3
SD = standard deviation; t - value = t - test statistic; CI = confidence interval; n = sample size; PSV = peak systolic velocity, PI = pulsatility index; RI = resistive index; VDI = vessel diameter inner to inner.								

## 4.7 Discussion

In this investigation, the ultrasound parameters consisting of peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index and vessel diameter inner to inner showed good repeatability in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD which reflected as good ( $ICC \geq 0.8$ ;  $0.6 - 0.9$ , 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC \leq 1.0$ ;  $1.0 - 1.0$ , 95% CI) reliability, low variability ( $\leq 5.6\%$  CV), small measurement error ( $SEM \leq 1.09$ ) and small magnitude of measurement error ( $SDD < 10\%$ ) with the exclusion of vessel diameter inner to inner for the posterior tibial artery ( $SDD\% = 13.6\%$ ). Additionally, the difference between the two sessions of measurements for all the ultrasound parameters was not significant, except for vessel diameter inner to inner for the posterior tibial arteries which showed a higher magnitude of measurement error ( $SDD\% = 13.6\%$ ) and a significant difference between sessions ( $p = 0.0$ ;  $t = -2.5$ ). Similarly, the anterior tibial arteries which showed a significant difference between sessions ( $p = 0.0$ ;  $t = -2.9$ ).

Deducting from the SEM equation;  $SEM = SD \text{ (first observed)} \times \sqrt{1 - ICC}$  (first observed), it can be seen that measurements show an SEM closer to zero, thus  $SDD\% \leq 10\%$  when reliability is 1.0 thus there will be no errors of measurement with a perfectly reliable test while a set of errors all equal to zero have no variability (Harvill, 2019). Similarly, these findings were obtained by Thomas et al., (2015); Sheppard et al., (2011) in their studies with different populations as well. The findings of this investigation reflected a low SEM of  $\leq 1.1$  ( $SDD \leq 10\%$ ) in all the measurements of the ultrasound parameters except for vessel diameter inner to inner for the posterior tibial arteries which showed an unacceptably high  $SDD\%$  (13.6%).

No prior evidence was found justifying the utilisation of ultrasound parameters to quantify or screen for early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients or non-diabetic participants during the writing up of this thesis. One study by

Leoniuk et al., (2014), utilised Doppler and B-mode ultrasound parameters to compare blood flow in the posterior tibial arteries and dorsalis pedis arteries of diabetic Polish participants with early-stage PAD with a non-diabetic control group and they established no significant difference in the measurements for the Doppler ultrasound between the two groups ( $p > 0.05$ ). In their study, Leoniuk et al., (2014) did not show evidence which tested the robustness of their ultrasound tool before utilising it in measuring lower limb blood flow in a larger sample of their study to minimise on measurement error. The prior assessment of measurement error of a measurement tool is important to show the evidence that the tool can be able to accurately measure clinically significant changes which can show effects of an intervention on patients (Lee et al., 2013). Again, a small magnitude of the measurement error in a tool increases the confidence of using this tool to screen for pathology in larger sample populations (Lee et al., 2013). The generalisability of the findings of the study by Leoniuk et al., (2014) was not clear based on the fact that there was no clear description of the population studied in Poland i.e. whether the population was homogeneous or heterogeneous.

In this investigation, the ultrasound parameters including peak systolic velocity, resistive index, and pulsatility index showed a small SEM and a small SDD% except for vessel diameter inner to inner for the anterior tibial arteries and the posterior tibial arteries. These findings reflected the evidence that peak systolic velocity, resistive index and pulsatility index can detect a clinically significant change in the lower limb blood flow resulting from early-stage PAD with the exclusion of vessel diameter inner to inner due to more measurement errors.

Again, bias due to the misclassification of exposure and outcomes was not minimised in the methodology of the study by Leoniuk et al., (2014) for no controls were put in place to limit the effects of nitrate enriched diets, blood pressure reducing medications or alcohol and this could have affected basal blood flow in the participants before the undertaking of Doppler ultrasound measurements and this could have contributed to error in their measurements.

The categorisation for early-stage by Leoniuk et al., (2014), utilised PAD grading undertaken by Fontaine et al., (1954) which classified early stage (asymptomatic) PAD in the category of incomplete blood vessel obstruction. However, the weakness of the PAD classification by Fontaine et al., (1954) is that it does not provide objective data which rules out the probability of symptomatic PAD. This was accordingly revealed in the findings of Leoniuk et al., (2014) which then showed 41 out of 148 arterial segments which had Doppler ultrasound waveforms with the biphasic flow and 4 out of 148 arterial segments which had Doppler waveforms with monophasic flow reflecting the presence of haemodynamically significant changes of symptomatic PAD amongst their participants.

In this investigation, the grading for PAD was done utilising the classification by Rutherford et al., (1997) which classified early-stage PAD as asymptomatic grade zero which is confirmed by objective data of a normal reactive hyperaemic test or treadmill test. All the diabetic patients in this investigation underwent reactive hyperaemic testing to strengthen the objectivity of grading for early-stage PAD and all the ultrasound Doppler waveforms of the participants' arterial segments showed normal triphasic flow reflecting evidence of non- haemodynamically significant changes in early-stage PAD.

#### **4.8 Strengths and Limitations**

The findings of this investigation had limited external validity because due to a limited budget, the principal investigator was not able to draw a wider heterogeneous sample size representing the Zimbabwean population such that these findings will only be generalised to Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage PAD.

In this investigation, the principal investigator utilised Body Mass Index to establish the health status of the diabetic patients though it had a weakness of not being able to differentiate weight from fat or muscle. This was because the budget of the thesis was limited and could not afford better tools for

assessing body fat e.g. from skinfold thickness measurements. Thus, in this thesis, the principal investigator utilised Body Mass Index as a screening tool for body fatness in the participants but not as a diagnostic tool.

The principal investigator utilised reactive hyperaemic testing was utilised for screening for early-stage PAD in the asymptomatic diabetic patients despite prior evidence of it causing mild discomfort in the participants, this was because of the limited budget of the thesis which could not afford a treadmill.

During the gathering of data, the principal investigator dropped the assessment of the dorsalis pedis arteries since the measurements for vessel diameter inner to inner were not consistently reproducible. Therefore, she decided to stop the further analysis of the dorsalis pedis artery in the second investigation.

The strength of this investigation was that it was carried out with some controls put in place by the principal investigator to minimise recall, performance and misclassification of exposure and outcomes bias as well as measurement error (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010). Again, the other control put in place by the principal investigator was the objective screening for early-stage PAD using reactive hyperaemic testing to reduce measurement error by recruiting diabetic patients with a similar stage of PAD.

The other strength of this investigation was that the principal investigator determined the repeatability of the measurement method under controlled settings to establish its robustness before utilisation it with a bigger sample of participants in the second and third investigations of this thesis.

## **4.9 Conclusions and recommendations**

Based on the findings of this investigation, the principal investigator concluded that ultrasound parameters which include peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index were repeatable in measuring the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of asymptomatic Zimbabwean

Black/African diabetic patients with no significant or meaningful differences between sessions except vessel diameter inner to inner.

In this investigation, the principal investigator, therefore, recommended that peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index be utilised side by side with Ankle Brachial Index in screening and quantifying early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients.

#### **4.10 Implications**

The principal investigator deducted the implications of this investigation as that the ultrasound parameters such which include peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index form a robust diagnostic protocol for demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on lower limb blood flow of asymptomatic Black/African Zimbabwean diabetic patients.

#### **4.11 Decision making for the second investigation**

The principal investigator decided to import peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index into the second investigation to compare blood flow in the lower limb arteries of non-diabetic participants and asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD due to their robustness shown in this investigation. The principal investigator also decided to drop vessel diameter inner to inner from further assessments of blood flow between groups in the second investigation due to more errors in measurements and instability between sessions.

## Chapter 5 – Second Investigation

### Abstract

**Comparison of key ultrasound variables between the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage Peripheral Artery Disease and non-diabetic controls.**

**Keywords:** Atherosclerosis, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index, resistive index.

**Objectives:** i) To compare lower limb blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage peripheral artery disease (PAD) and non-diabetic controls using duplex ultrasound parameters.

ii) To determine if there were any significant or meaningful differences in, dependent variables (ultrasound parameters) between groups.

**Methods:** A comparative cohort study of lower limb blood flow in 35 Black-African diabetic patients (25 females and 10 males) with early-stage PAD and 36 non-diabetic controls (28 females and 8 males); median age 54 (IQR, 47 – 61) years; median HbA<sub>1c</sub> 6.3 (IQR, 5.7 – 8.0)%; mean BMI 29.2 ( $\pm$  6.7); mean ABI 1.1 ( $\pm$  0.1). Robust ultrasound parameters from the first investigation which included peak systolic velocity (PSV), pulsatility index (PI) and resistive index (RI), were utilised to compare blood flow in the popliteal arteries (PA), anterior tibial arteries (ATA) and posterior tibial arteries (PTA) between groups while Ankle Brachial Index was measured and compared between groups as a parallel test.

**Results:** the ultrasound parameters consisting of PSV, RI and PI were significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P < 0.001$ ;  $d \geq 0.3$ ), in diabetic patients compared to non-diabetic controls except for PI - PTA ( $P = 0.7$ ;  $d = 0.1$ ). All the ultrasound parameters showed good ( $ICC \geq 0.7$ ; 0.5 – 0.85, 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC \geq 1.0$ ; 1.0 – 1.0, 95% CI) within groups as well as acceptable variability ( $< 10\%$  CV) within groups other than pulsatility index of the anterior tibial artery within diabetic patients (11.1%CV).

**Conclusions:** Ultrasound parameters including PSV and RI demonstrated a difference in lower limb blood flow between diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls. Thus, these parameters were able to highlight the effects of early-stage PAD on lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients. However, the effects of early-stage PAD on blood flow were not demonstrated in the PTA and ATA of diabetic patients by PI.

Correspondence to: Josephine S Tityiwe, National University of Science and Technology, Radiography Department, Corner Cecil/Gwanda Road, P. O. Box AC 939 Ascot, Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. Email: [josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw](mailto:josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw) / [J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk](mailto:J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk)



## 5.1 Introduction

Prior studies on PAD have shown a high prevalence of asymptomatic PAD in the primary health care set up (Fowkes et al., 1991; Criqui et al., 1985). Therefore, enhanced early detection of PAD in patients at risk for PAD and cardiovascular diseases such as diabetics is essential to enable earlier initiation of treatment to delay the patients' from sliding into late-stage PAD symptoms such as critical limb ischaemia and gangrene.

Current guidelines (Rooke et al, 2011; Hirsh et al., 2005; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016) have recommended Ankle Brachial Index for the screening and quantification of asymptomatic PAD and this is even though Ankle Brachial Index is not able to provide objective information on the clinical severity of the disease to the referring clinician. The aim of this investigation was therefore to establish the capability of duplex ultrasound parameters in detecting the effects of early-stage PAD on the blood flow of asymptomatic Black/ African Zimbabwean diabetic patients. The justification for the undertaking of this investigation being that no prior study was done showing evidence on the utilisation of duplex ultrasound this way. Thus, this investigation aimed to show whether duplex ultrasound modality can be utilised to augment the findings of Ankle Brachial Index in the screening and quantification of early-stage PAD which causes less than 50% stenosis in the lower limb arteries of Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients.

Prior studies have shown that ultrasound parameters demonstrate high sensitivity (80 - 98%) and specificity (89 - 99%) in detecting late-stage PAD which causes  $\geq 50\%$  arterial lumen stenosis in diabetic patients (Collins et al., 2007; Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG 28), NICE 2015; Di Minno et al., 2014; Carthy, 2013). However, during the writing up of this thesis, no evidence was found on the utilisation of duplex ultrasound to assess the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limbs arterial blood flow of Black/ African diabetic patients in Zimbabwe and neither was there any documented evidence on

the sensitivity or specificity of ultrasound parameters in detecting effects of early-stage PAD on blood flow. This investigation aimed to fill this literature gap by utilising duplex ultrasound parameters which include peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index which came out as robust from the first investigation to compare blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD with non-diabetic controls in a bid to answer the first research question of this investigation. The second research question for this investigation was to establish if there could be a significant difference in blood flow between the groups which could be interpreted as caused by early-stage/ PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients. The first investigation of this thesis provided evidence on the robustness of peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index and the weakness of vessel diameter inner to inner in measuring blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. Therefore, a decision was made to import peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index from the first investigation to compare blood flow between groups in this investigation.

In this investigation thus, the parameters which were to show a significant and meaningful difference between the two groups were to be interpreted as being able to demonstrate the effects of early-stage PAD on lower limb arterial blood flow. This evidence could be utilised in the formation of a new diagnostic pathway for augmenting the screening and quantification of early-stage PAD in diabetic patients using duplex ultrasound.

## **5.2 Aims**

- i) To compare blood flow between the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls using the ultrasound parameters.
- ii) To determine if there were any significant or meaningful differences in, dependent variables (ultrasound parameters) between groups.

### **5.2.1 Research Questions**

- i) How do ultrasound parameters compare between diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls in the measurement of blood flow?
- ii) Are there significant or meaningful differences in ultrasound blood flow parameters between groups?

## **5.3 Methodology**

### **5.3.1 Design**

The principal investigator outlined the design for this Comparative Cohort investigation in section 3.3 of this thesis. Demographic data collection and stratification of participants with anonymous codes was undertaken by the trained research assistants from the first investigation in-order to minimise selection bias (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010) through blinding of the principal investigator during this process.

The ultrasound parameters measurements were performed by the principal investigator who was blinded to the archived findings of each coded patient and the robust ultrasound parameters from the first investigation were utilised for lower limb arterial blood flow measurements in this investigation. This control strengthened the rigour of the design and the internal validity of this investigation.

The principal investigator gathered the data for this study over 36 days spanning from the end of May to June 2017, and two patients were booked per day for a scan to allow uncompromised patient care during the gathering of data. The principal investigator performed the ultrasound measurements thrice per each participant and recorded the mean value for each parameter in one measurement session and this minimised measurement error.

### 5.3.2 Population

The principal investigator drew the sample for this investigation from a population of Black/African diabetic patients attending the diabetic clinic at Mpilo Central Hospital in the city of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. Black/ African patients formed the majority of the patients attending this clinic and it was feasible to recruit the required sample size through convenience sampling. See section 1.2.1 about the population detail of Zimbabwe. The principal investigator also recruited the control group participants from the staff and students of the National University of Science and Technology through convenience sampling as well.

### 5.3.3 Sampling

The principal investigator determined the sample size for this investigation through power calculation for the reliability justification of a diagnostic tool and used Schuman's two-sided  $t$ -test procedure (equation 10a). The principal investigator then calculated the minimum sample size ( $n$ ) for this investigation as shown in equation 10a;

$$n = \frac{2CV^2 \times (Z_\alpha + Z_\beta)^2}{d^2}, \quad 10a$$

Where;

- Coefficient of variation ( $CV$ ) = 50%, the median intra-individual variability when ultrasound parameters are measured as reported in the literature.
- $Z_\beta = 0.84$ , the standard value for normal distribution at power ( $\beta$ ) = 80%
- $Z_\alpha = 1.96$  the standard value for normal distribution at the level of significance ( $\alpha$ ) = 5% i.e.

- $d = 25\%$ , the significant difference in the mean value of ultrasound parameters that we expect between health and diseased subjects
- Hence  $n = \frac{2CV^2 \times (Z_\alpha + Z_\beta)^2}{d^2} = \frac{2 \times 0.5^2 \times (1.96 + 0.84)^2}{0.25^2} = 62$  10a
- The principal investigator adjusted for a study dropout of 10% and made the required sample size to be 68 participants (i.e. 34 in the diabetic lower limb arteries group and 34 in the controls).

However, the principal investigator decided to work with a sample of 71 participants who were recruited by the research assistants, with 36 for the non-diabetic control group and 35 for the diabetic group. This sample size was robust enough for justifying the reliability of the ultrasound protocol and was also within the practicalities of the allocated budget for the study. The principal investigator evaluated all hypothesis tests at 5% level of significance ( $p \leq 0.05$ ).

#### 5.3.4 Participants

In this comparative cohort study, the principal investigator compared the lower limb arteries blood flow of a cohort of 35 (49%) asymptomatic diabetic patients (males  $n = 10$ , females  $n = 25$ ) with early-stage PAD and a control of 36 (51%) non-diabetic participants (males  $n = 8$ , females  $n = 28$ ) of the same ethnic group (Black/African) and age range (18 -70 years).

The principal investigator outlined the justification for the inclusion and exclusion criteria for the participants for this investigation in section 3.4 of this thesis. This inclusion criterion included adult participants with early-stage PAD which was objectively confirmed through reactive hyperaemic testing. See section 3.5 in chapter 3 of this thesis. The principal investigator excluded pregnant participants, as well as smokers and ex-smokers and the justification for this exclusion criteria, is outlined in section 3.4 of this thesis. The principal investigator outlined the prior preparation of the participants for this investigation in section 3.6 of this thesis and the recruitment strategy utilised for

all the participants in section 3.5 of this thesis. The research assistants maintained good contact with participants through text messages and telephoning reminding them of their appointment booking as well as their dietary preparations before blood flow measurements. In a bid to confirm participants' adherence to prior dietary preparation instructions, the research assistants instructed the participants to diarise the diet they would have eaten during the three days before the undertaking of blood flow measurements.

The principal investigator highlighted on the information sheets that all the diabetic patients who did not qualify to be categorised as having early-stage PAD were no longer eligible to participate in this investigation but were left to continue their treatment with the physician in the diabetic clinic. Therefore, she instructed the research assistants not to recruit such patients for the sample.

All the participants in both groups provided written informed consent for participation to the principal investigator while the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe and the Salford University Ethics board approved the study.

### **5.3.5 Bias from the misclassification of exposure and outcomes.**

The principal investigator minimised bias from the misclassification of exposure and outcomes (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010) by designing prior dietary and medication preparation for the participants in a bid to maintain similar lower limb arterial basal blood flow in participants thus avoiding the masking of the true effects of early-stage PAD. The principal investigator tackled the following external factors in the prior preparation of participants;

- i) Effects of recent food intake on blood flow.
- ii) Effects of nitrate from consumed nitrate diets,
- iii) Effects of meaty diet on creatinine levels in the blood,
- iv) Effects of alcohol on blood flow,

v) Effects of diabetes and hypertensive medication before undertaking ultrasound protocol measurements and

vi) Effects of exercise on heart rate, the patients were allowed supine rest of 10 minutes before the undertaking of ultrasound parameters measurements.

In this investigation, bias from the misclassification of exposure and outcomes (Paccunni and Wilkins, 2010) was again minimised through reactive hyperaemic testing of diabetic patients by the physician thus the sample for this investigation was drawn from asymptomatic diabetic participants, with all of them having PAD in the early stages.

Duplex ultrasound which was utilised by the principal investigator to perform the ultrasound measurements for this investigation is an objective test with documented high sensitivity and specificity (Collins et al., 2007; Eiberg et al., 2010) therefore, this minimised measurement error.

## **5.4 Data collection procedures**

### **5.4.1 Recruitment Plan**

In this investigation, 35 diabetic participants with early-stage PAD were recruited by research assistants as they came to Mpilo Central hospital's diabetic clinic during the weekdays when the clinic was open from Tuesday to Thursday. See section 3.5 for the recruitment strategy undertaken until a sample of 35 diabetic patients was reached thus the recruitment of the right lower leg of each diabetic patient for the sake of consistency.

The research assistants recruited the participants for the non-diabetic control group from volunteering staff and students from the National University of Science and Technology, Zimbabwe through a mass e-mail advert which was flown on the University students' and staff members' website by the principal investigator. See section 3.5 for more detail on the recruitment of the sample of 36 non-diabetic control participants.

The Recruitment of the participants for both groups was voluntarily and participants could drop out anytime during the investigation if they so wished without being inconvenienced in any way.

#### **5.4.2 Duplex Ultrasound parameters measurements**

The bookings for the second and third investigations were done concurrently by the research assistants three days after the undertaking of the reactive hyperaemic tests. This was done to enable the participants to undergo three days of dietary preparations, abscinding alcohol 48 hours before and abscinding medication in the morning of the examination day (Section 3.6) before the undertaking of blood tests in the laboratory (section 3.6), Ankle Brachial Index measurements (section 3.7) and duplex ultrasound measurements (section 3.8) by the principal investigator. After the undertaking of the duplex ultrasound measurements for the second investigation by the principal investigator, the research assistants instructed each participant to rest with their gown in the waiting area and assisted them with instructions for the third investigation. See 6.3.2 of this thesis for more information.



## 5.5 Statistical analyses

The principal investigator compared all normally distributed demographic data between the two groups using two - samples *t*-test and reported the data as mean (standard deviation [SD]) (Table 5). Additionally, the principal investigator calculated Cohen's *d* effect sizes to determine the magnitude of any differences between the demographic data for these two groups and categorised it according to Cohen, (1988), as *d* <0.20 *trivial*; *d* = 0.20 - 0.49 *small*; *d* = 0.50 - 0.80 *medium* and *d* >0.80 *large* respectively (Lakens, 2013; Sawilowsky, 2009). The principal investigator compared all non-normal demographic data using the two-sample Wilcoxon's rank-sum test and reported the data as median (interquartile range [IQR]) (Table 5) See section 4.5 for more detail on the justification for normality testing.

The principal investigator documented high blood pressure as the confounding variable between the two samples data to establish its variability amongst the sample exposed to diabetes and the sample not exposed to diabetes using the Chi-square test (Diener-West, 2020).

The first research question of this investigation sought to establish if there was a difference in blood flow between diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls. Therefore, in a bid to answer the first research question, the principal investigator carried out the analysis for all ultrasound parameters in SPSS (Version 16.0) SPSS, Inc., IL, and USA. The principal investigator then obtained mean values and percentage mean difference values between groups from three within sessions' measurements for each ultrasound parameter which they utilised to calculate within sessions' reliability ICC and the associated 95% confidence interval (CI). Again, the principal investigator classified the ICC values as follows; i) good = 0.60 - 0.74; ii) very good = 0.75 - 0.89 and iii) excellent  $\geq 0.90$  (Koo and Li, 2016). The principal investigator interpreted a significant and meaningful difference in, dependent variables between groups as the ability by ultrasound parameters to

demonstrate the effects of early-stage PAD on the blood flow of diabetic patients. This was done in a bid to answer research question 2 of this investigation.

To establish the variability of the ultrasound parameters amongst individuals in each group of participants, the principal investigator calculated the percentage coefficient of variation (%CV) and set the acceptable variability in this investigation at an upper limit of less than 10%CV, thus in comparison to previously established %CV values reporting good reliability (Thomas et al., 2015; Cormack et al., 2008; Sheppard et al., 2011).

## **5.6 Results**

### **5.6.1 Demographic findings**

In a cohort of 71 Black-African participants, 36 (51%) were non-diabetic controls and 35 (49%) were diabetic participants with early-stage PAD. The median for age was significantly higher in diabetic patients compared to non-diabetic patients (Table 6).

The *means (SD)* for Body Mass Index were neither significantly nor meaningfully different between diabetic patients and the non-diabetic controls (Table 5), however, the *median HbA<sub>1c</sub>* levels were significantly higher in diabetic patients when compared to do the non-diabetic controls (Table 6). There were neither significant nor meaningful differences in Ankle Brachial Index between diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls (Table 6).

**Table 6:** Comparison of subject characteristics between 35 (49%) diabetic patients and 36 (51%) non-diabetic patients where Body Mass Index (BMI) and Ankle Brachial Index (ABI) and Estimated Glomerular Filtration Rate (EGFR) did not show a significant or meaningful difference between groups while a significant difference was observed between groups in age and glycated haemoglobin levels (HbA<sub>1c</sub>.)s

Non-normal demographic data				
Parameter	Control Median (IQR)	Diabetic Median (IQR)	Two sample t-test p-value	T-test p- value
<b>AGE</b>	37.5 (33 – 54) yrs.	54 (47 – 61) yrs.	0.01	0.01
<b>EGFR</b>	108 (95.5 – 127.5) ml/min/1.73 m <sup>2</sup>	112 (96.0 - 126.0) ml/min/1.73 m <sup>2</sup>	0.8	0.8
<b>HbA<sub>1c</sub></b>	5.6 (5.1 – 6.0)%	6.3 (6.0 – 8.0)%	0.0	0.0
Normal demographic data				
Parameter	Mean (sd) non-diabetics	Mean (sd) Diabetics	Two sample t-test p-value	Cohen's d effect sizes
<b>BMI</b>	29 (7.0)	29.2 (7.0)	0.7	0.1
<b>ABI</b>	1.1 (0.1)	1.1 (0.1)	0.8	0.1

### 5.6.2 Association between high blood pressure and diabetic status (Confounding variable)

**Table 7** shows that there was a noted significant association between high blood pressure and diabetic participants with early-stage PAD in their lower limb arteries, as reflected by 28 diabetic participants out of 35 had high blood pressure when compared to only 7 non-diabetic participants out of 36 had high blood pressure, ( $p < 0.001$ ).

	Status		
High Blood Pressure	Non-diabetic	Diabetic	P-value
No	29 (81.0%)	7 (20.0%)	
Yes	7 (19.4%)	28 (80.0%)	<0.001
Total	36	35	

### **5.6.3 The popliteal arteries findings**

In the popliteal arteries, the means (SD) for peak systolic velocity, resistive index and pulsatility index was significantly and meaningfully higher in diabetic patients compared to non-diabetic controls (Table 8). Again, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index showed very well to excellent reliability within sessions for diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls and the measurements of all the parameters showed acceptably low variability within sessions for both groups (Table 8).

**Table 8** Descriptive statistics and within sessions reliability of ultrasound parameters in the diabetic and non-diabetic popliteal artery.

Variable	Mean (SD) diabetic patients	Mean (SD) non-diabetic patients	% mean difference	T-test p-value	Cohen's d effect	ICC within sessions diabetic patients 95% CI	ICC within sessions non-diabetic patients 95% CI	%CV within sessions of diabetic patients	%CV within sessions non-diabetic patients
Peak systolic velocity	73.0 (10.3) cm/s	56.3 (5.3) cm/s	16.2%	<0.0001	2.0	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.1%	0.3%
Pulsatility index	8.2 (2.3)	9.0(3.0)	0.4%	0.5	0.2	1.0 (1.0 – 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 – 1.0)	9.0%	5.4%
Resistive index	1.1 (0.1)	1.0 (0.1)	6.1%	<0.001	1.0	0.9 (0.7 – 1.0)	0.7 (0.5 – 0.8)	7.0%	2.3%
SD = standard deviation; ICC = intraclass correlation coefficient; %CV = percentage coefficient of variation; %mean difference = percentage mean difference									

#### 5.6.4 Anterior tibial artery (ATA) findings

In the anterior tibial arteries, the means (ds) for peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and the resistive index was significantly and meaningfully higher in diabetic patients compared to non-diabetic patients (Table 9). Again, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index showed good to excellent reliability within sessions for all the groups

and acceptably low variability was noted in the measurements of all the parameters in both groups except in pulsatility index for the diabetic patients (Table 9).

**Table 9** Descriptive statistics and within sessions reliability of ultrasound parameters in the diabetic and non-diabetic anterior tibial arteries.

Variable	Mean(SD) diabetic patients	Mean (SD) non-diabetic patients	% mean difference	T-test p- value	Cohen's d effect sizes	ICC within sessions diabetic patients 95% CI	ICC within sessions non-diabetic patients 95% CI	%CV within sessions diabetic patients	%CV within sessions non -diabetic patients
Peak systolic velocity	47.0 (9.0) cm/s	40.0 (7.2) cm/s	17.0 %	<0.001	0.8	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.7%	0.7%
Pulsatility index	8.0 (2.2)	7.0 (2.0)	12.0%	<0.001	0.4	0.9 (0.8 – 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 – 1.0)	<b>11.1%</b>	4.5%
Resistive index	1.1 (0.1)	1.0 (0.1)	6.0%	<0.001	0.6	0.7 (0.5 - 0.8)	0.7 (0.4 - 0.8)	5.2%	3.0%
SD = standard deviation; ICC = intraclass correlation coefficient; %CV = percentage coefficient of variation; SDD = smallest detectable difference; SEM = standard error of measurement									

#### **5.6.5 Posterior tibial artery (PTA) findings**

In the posterior tibial arteries, the means (SD) for peak systolic velocity and the resistive index was significantly and meaningfully higher in diabetic patients compared to non-diabetic patients, other than pulsatility index (Table 10). Again, peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index showed good to excellent within sessions reliability in both groups and the variability amongst measurements of all parameters in both groups was acceptable (Table 10).



**Table10** Descriptive statistics and within sessions reliability of ultrasound parameters in the diabetic and non-diabetic posterior tibial artery.

Variable	Mean (SD) diabetic patients	Mean (SD) non-diabetic patients	% Mean Difference	T-test p-value	Cohen's d effect sizes	ICC within sessions of diabetic patients 95% CI	ICC within sessions of non-diabetic patients 95% CI	%CV within sessions of diabetic patients	%CV within sessions of non-diabetic patients
Peak systolic velocity	44.0 (12.0) cm/s	41.0 (8.0) cm/s	9.0%	0.01	0.3	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	2.0%	0.6%
Pulsatility index	7.0 (5.1)	7.0 (2.0)	3.0%	<b>0.7</b>	<b>0.1</b>	1.0 (1.0 - 1.0)	1.0 (0.9 - 1.0)	10.0%	4.3%
Resistive index	1.1 (0.2)	1.0 (0.1)	5.1%	<0.001	0.4	0.7(0.5 - 0.85)	0.8 (0.7- 0.9)	8.0%	3.0%
SD = standard deviation; ICC = intraclass correlation coefficient; %CV = percentage coefficient of variation; %mean difference = percentage mean difference									

## 5.7 Discussion

### 5.7.1 Duplex ultrasound parameters.

In this investigation, the ultrasound parameters consisting of peak systolic velocity, resistive index and pulsatility index were significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P < 0.001$ ;  $d \geq 0.3$ ), in diabetic patients compared to non-diabetic controls except for pulsatility index of the posterior tibial arteries ( $P = 0.7$ ;  $d = 0.1$ ). All the ultrasound parameters showed good ( $ICC \geq 0.7$ ;  $0.5 - 0.9$ , 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC \leq 1.0$ ;  $1.0 - 1.0$ , 95% CI) within sessions reliability as well as acceptable variability ( $< 10\%$  CV) within groups except pulsatility index of the anterior tibial arteries for diabetic patients ( $11.1\%$  CV) (Tables 8; 9; 10). These findings were in line with the research question for this investigation which sought to determine if the ultrasound parameters could show a difference in blood flow between the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage (asymptomatic) PAD and the non-diabetic controls. A Significant and meaningful difference in blood flow between the two groups was interpreted as the ability to demonstrate the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients while the non-significant and non-meaningful difference in blood flow between the two groups was interpreted as an inability to demonstrate the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients. The findings of this investigation showed peak systolic and resistive index as robust ultrasound parameters able to detect a difference in blood flow between diabetic patients with early-stage (asymptomatic) PAD and non-diabetic controls. Thus, peak systolic velocity and resistive index were concluded as the ones able to demonstrate the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients with the exclusion of the pulsatility index.

In the first investigation with a smaller sample size ( $n = 10$ ), within sessions reliability ranged from very good ( $ICC \geq 0.8$ ;  $0.6 - 0.9$ , 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC$

$\leq 1.0$ ;  $1.0 - 1.0$ , 95%CI) with a %CV of less or equal to 5.6%. Similarly, in this investigation having a larger sample size ( $n = 35$  diabetic patients;  $n = 36$  non-diabetic patients) within sessions reliability ranged from good ( $ICC \geq 0.7$ ;  $0.5 - 0.9$ , 95% CI) to excellent ( $ICC \leq 1.0$ ;  $1.0 - 1.0$ , 95%CI) with a %CV of less than 10%. These findings reflected that the ultrasound parameters were robust in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD as well as in the non-diabetic controls.

Most of the ultrasound parameters showed a high mean percentage difference (less or equal to 16%) between groups compared to the Smallest Detectable Difference (9.2%) of individual successive measurements done in the first investigation for the popliteal arteries and anterior tibial arteries. This reflected that the change in blood flow seen in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD in the popliteal arteries and anterior tibial arteries was of clinical significance and would call for a change in the management of the diabetic patients (Tables 8 and 9).

In the posterior tibial arteries for this investigation, the ultrasound parameters showed smaller values for the mean percentage difference (less or equal to 8.5%) between groups compared to the Smallest detectable difference (7.7%) from successive individual measurements in the first investigation thus, reflecting that the blood flow changes observed in the posterior tibial artery due to early-stage PAD were not clinically significant.

A study by Zhang et al., (2013) reported that resistive index of the acral finger was significantly higher ( $p < 0.001$ ) in diabetic patients with late-stage (symptomatic) PAD compared to non-diabetic controls. Similarly, their results also reflected that RI in diabetic patients became even higher as the duration of diabetes mellitus increased ( $P < 0.01$ ). Jansen, (2005) also showed that pulsatility index was reduced in late-stage PAD, their findings showed that a pulsatility index of  $< 1.2$  indicated critical limb ischaemia with a sensitivity of 0.9 and a specificity of 0.6 while Ankle Brachial Index of less than 0.9 showed a

sensitivity of 0.7 and a specificity of 0.4. However, the findings of Jansen, (2005) were in diabetic patients with late-stage (symptomatic) PAD and this scenario peak systolic velocity reduced while end-diastolic velocity was mostly absent due to increasing resistance to blood flow thus resulting in a smaller value of pulsatility index as depicted by the formula for pulsatility index in equation 1 chapter 2. Therefore the findings of these prior studies all provided evidence on the utilisation of ultrasound parameters to detect and grade late-stage (symptomatic) PAD.

The findings of this investigation showed different mean values for ultrasound parameters in the lower limb blood flow of Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls when compared to prior published range values of healthy individuals and diabetic patients with late-stage PAD. In this investigation, the mean value for peak systolic velocity in the popliteal arteries of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD was  $72.9 \pm 10.3$  cm/s while prior evidence (Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014; Chavhan et al, 2008), has shown a peak systolic velocity of greater than 180 cm/s elicited in arterial stenosis of greater or equal to 50%. This confirmed that the sample participants for this investigation could have been having arterial stenosis of way less than 50% stenosis but the ultrasound parameters still managed to demonstrate the effects of early-stage PAD in the blood flow of these diabetic patients. Therefore, this evidence justifies the need to utilise duplex ultrasound parameters to enhance screening and quantification of early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients alongside the prior recommended Ankle Brachial Index.

In this investigation, the mean value for peak systolic velocity in the popliteal arteries of non-diabetic controls was lower ( $55.3 \pm 3$  cm/s) compared to prior published mean normal value for other healthy populations ( $68 \pm 1$  cm/s). These different values for blood flow shown by peak systolic velocity maybe be due to different ethnicities, lifestyles or diets of the sample populations of participants in the different studies (Sanna et al., 2011). In their study, Sanna et

al., (2011) also noted that the epidemiology of PAD was not homogenous amongst different ethnic populations with diverse lifestyles and diets.

Prior evidence (Gerhard-Herman et al, 2006; Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014) has shown the normal ranges for the peak systolic velocity of tibial arteries in healthy individuals as  $55 \pm 1$  cm/s while this investigation findings in non-diabetic controls showed a lower mean peak systolic velocity of the anterior tibial arteries ( $40.0 \pm 7.2$  cm/s) and the mean peak systolic velocity for the posterior tibial arteries was lower as well ( $40.6 \pm 8.0$  cm/s).

The pulsatility index for the popliteal arteries in healthy individuals in prior studies was shown as greater than 8 (Gerhard-Herman et al, 2006; Hodgkiss-Harlow and Bandyk, 2014) while in this investigation the mean pulsatility index value for the non-diabetic controls was lower and shown as ( $6.9 \pm 2.1$ ).

### **5.7.2 Ankle Brachial Index (ABI)**

The principal investigator utilised Ankle-Brachial index as a complementary parallel test alongside the ultrasound protocol parameters to detect early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients (Rooke et al., 2011; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016; Norgren et al., 2007; Carthy 2013). The test has been recommended in practice guidelines to screen and quantify early stage (symptomatic) PAD in prior studies undertaken in other populations, and Ankle Brachial Index values less or equal to 0.9 reflect PAD in the lower limb arteries (Rooke et al., 2011; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016; Norgren et al., 2007; Carthy 2013).

In this investigation, there was no significant difference, ( $P > 0.05$ ) in the values for Ankle Brachial Index between the groups thus Ankle Brachial Index was a weaker test in demonstrating early stage (asymptomatic) PAD in diabetic patients while ultrasound parameters including peak systolic velocity and resistive index demonstrated the effects of early-stage PAD in the blood flow of participants with Ankle Brachial Index values greater than 0.9 (Table 6).

Late-stage PAD results in pressure reduction in the ankle arteries while the upper arm arteries will still be yet unaffected, thus resulting in a lower value for Ankle Brachial Index in such patients. However, the case is not true in early-stage (asymptomatic) PAD because pressure reduction will not yet be taking place in the ankle arteries, thus when they get divided by the unaffected upper arms pressure the result would reflect normal values of Ankle Brachial Index of around 1. See section 2.1.4 for more information on how the Ankle Brachial Index is calculated.

### **5.7.3 Confounding variables**

In this investigation, the noted confounding variable was high blood pressure and findings of this investigation showed a positive correlative relationship between diabetes and medical history of high blood pressure (Table 7).

### **5.7.4 Strengths and Limitations**

The strength of this investigation was that it was carried out under controlled settings which were put in place by the principal investigator to limit performance, recall, selection and misclassification of exposure and outcomes bias as well as measurement error. This investigation aimed to compare ultrasound parameters measurements of blood flow between the groups which were incomparable conditions when the measurements were taken, such that the lapse period of one month over which the data was gathered by the principal investigator did not matter even if it could have allowed the accumulation of a thicker plaque than initial values at the beginning of the month since the investigation was not aimed at investigating any changes in blood flow with time.

### **5.7.5 Internal and external validity**

This investigation had good internal validity since principal investigator put in place a rigorous inclusion and exclusion criteria, and recruitment strategy for

the sample which minimised the effects of bias. The simple random sampling which was utilised by the research assistants during recruitment of the study sample allowed a fair chance of recruitment of all participants while this process was blinded to the principal investigator, who held knowledge of the exposure and outcomes of the study. The principal investigator was also blinded during the collection and analysis of data.

In this investigation, the variables considered were exposure to diabetes in early stages or non-exposure to diabetes in the participants while the outcome measured was blood flow in the lower limb arteries and the principal investigator conducted this investigation under idealised controlled measures such that the findings of this investigation were representative of the true association between exposure and expected outcome and thus could be generalised to the population of Zimbabwean Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. However, the findings of this investigation could not conclude generalisability to other populations resident in Zimbabwe besides Black/Africans due to lack of heterogeneity in the sample.

The principal investigator stratified the confounding variable of high blood pressure amongst the participants of both groups and established its correlation with both groups.

## **5.8 Conclusions**

There were significant and meaningful differences between the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls as determined by peak systolic velocity and resistive index with diabetic patients exhibiting higher values compared to controls except pulsatility index. Therefore, the principal investigator concluded that peak systolic velocity and resistive index were capable of demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the blood flow of asymptomatic diabetic patients while pulsatility index was

a weaker parameter due to more measurement errors in the anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries.

## **5.9 Decision making**

The principal investigator then decided to continue the assessment of peak systolic velocity and resistive index from this investigation to the third investigation of this thesis due to the robustness they demonstrated with the exclusion of pulsatility Index due to the demonstrated high percentage coefficient of variation. However, the principal investigator will assess the anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries with peak systolic velocity and the resistive index separately in post-doctoral work to reduce error in timing if two arterial segments were to be assessed in the same time slot for blood flow effects which quickly waned off. The principal investigator will also assess RI later in the postdoctoral work in a bid to reduce the number of parameters to be assessed in the third investigation thus allowing a more focussed assessment of peak systolic velocity.

## **5.10 Recommendations**

In this investigation, the principal investigator made the following recommendations;

- i) Duplex ultrasound parameters including peak systolic velocity and resistive index may be utilised to screen and quantify effects of early-stage (asymptomatic) PAD on the blood flow of diabetic patients with an Ankle Brachial Index value of greater than 0.90.
- ii) Ankle Brachial Index findings for screening and quantifying early-stage PAD may be enhanced with duplex ultrasound parameters such as peak systolic velocity and resistive index.
- iii) All patients at risk for PAD may need mandatory lower limb blood flow assessment with ultrasound parameters such as peak systolic velocity



and resistive index while still in the secondary care of the Zimbabwean health delivery system.

### **5.11 Implications of the second investigation**

The principal investigator deduced the implications of this investigation as that duplex ultrasound parameters including peak systolic velocity and resistive index were robust in demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients. Therefore, all diabetic patients in secondary care of the Zimbabwean health delivery system need to be screened with these parameters to enable enhanced quantification of early-stage PAD to prompt earlier introduction of therapy.

## Chapter 6 - Third investigation

### Abstract

**Acute effects of beetroot juice on blood flow and blood pressure in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD compared to non-diabetic controls.**

**Keywords:** *peripheral arterial disease, nitrite, nitric oxide, peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure, diastolic blood pressure.*

**Objective:** To determine the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow and blood pressure in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD compared to non-diabetic controls.

**Methods:** A quasi-experimental cohort study of lower limb blood flow in 35 Black-African diabetic patients and 36 non-diabetic controls *who were imported from the second investigation*). PSV, systolic blood pressure (SBP) and diastolic blood pressure (DBP) were utilised to assess blood flow in the popliteal arteries (PA), 90 minutes, 150 minutes, and 210 minutes-post-ingestion of beetroot juice both between and within groups. A two-way analysis of variance and a Benferroni test was performed to compare the two groups across 4-time points after the intake of beetroot juice. One sample and two-sample t-tests with Cohen's d effects sizes were performed to determine whether any changes in dependant variables were significant and meaningful within groups and between groups respectively.

**Results:** Within groups, PSV, SBP and DBP reduced significantly and meaningfully during baseline to 90 minutes and 150 minutes-210 minutes time points ( $P \leq 0.02$ ;  $d \leq 1.70$ ). However, no significant /meaningful change ( $P \leq 0.9$ ;  $d \leq 0.29$ ) occurred in PSV, SBP and DBP during the 90 minutes to 150 minutes time point. Between groups, PSV and DBP were significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P \leq 0.04$ ;  $d \leq 1.95$ ) in diabetic patients at baseline. However, at 90 minutes and 150 minutes PSV remained higher in diabetic patients ( $P \leq 0.04$ ;  $d \leq 1.30$ ) unlike SBP ( $P \leq 0.8$ ;  $d \leq 0.34$ ). At 210 minutes, PSV and SBP did not change significantly or meaningfully ( $P \leq 0.59$ ;  $d \leq 0.18$ ) while DBP showed no significant or meaningful difference ( $P \leq 0.7$ ;  $d \leq 0.33$ ) between the groups at all the time points. The combined group effects were significant for PSV ( $\text{diff} \leq 20.0 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P < 0.0001$ ) across all the time points except between 90 minutes to 150 minutes ( $\text{diff} = 0.4 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P = 1.0$ ) The combined group effects were significant for SBP ( $\text{diff} \leq 22.01 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P < 0.0001$ ) amongst all the time points except 90 minutes to 150 minutes time point ( $\text{diff} = 1.2 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P = 1.00$ ) and finally the combined group effects for DBP were significant and meaningful ( $\text{diff} \leq 13.4 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P < 0.0001$ ) amongst all the time points except 90 minutes to 150 minutes ( $\text{diff} = 1.34 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P = 1.00$ ) after beetroot juice ingestions.

**Conclusions:** The acute effects of beetroot juice on the blood flow of the popliteal artery were reflected as lowered PSV, SBP and DBP during the 150-210 minutes time point.

Correspondence to: Josephine S Tityiwe, National University of Science and Technology, Radiography, Department, Corner Cecil/Gwanda Road, P. O. Box AC 939 Ascot, Bulawayo, Zimbabwe. Email: [josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw](mailto:josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw) / [J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk](mailto:J.S.Tityiwe@edu.salford.ac.uk)

## 6.1 Introduction

Type 2 Diabetes mellitus is a risk factor for cardiovascular complications which include PAD and microvascular complications which include retinopathy, nephropathy, cerebrovascular disease erectile dysfunction to mention a few. This is mainly due to atherosclerosis/plaque build-up which occurs in the endothelium of the blood vessels of these diabetic patients (Steinberg, 2009; Steinberg and Wizturn, 2010). Chronically as atherosclerotic lesions are progressively deposited in the lumen of arteries in diabetic patients the process then becomes PAD and usually starts manifesting significantly in small diameter lower limb arteries below the knees. This gradual arterial stenosis due to plaque build-up in the endothelium manifests following endothelial cells injury by diabetes. This injury of the endothelium impairs the nitric oxide-L-arginine pathway thus reducing the bioavailability of nitric oxide which forms the anti-oxidation defence system to clear away reactive oxygen species, low-density lipoproteins and free radicals which are mostly produced during a host of defence and immunologic reactions by activated macrophages, preventing them from continually aggregating in the endothelium (Steinberg, 2009; Steinberg and Wizturn, 2010). This altered L-arginine-nitric oxide pathway and impaired nitric oxide bioavailability when uncontrolled it contributes to an acceleration of complications such as PAD, Hypertension and Cardiovascular diseases (Umans and Levi, 1995; Davignon and Ganz, 2004; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Siervo et al., 2013).

The UK and USA guidelines on adult Diabetes management outline the prescription of Aspirin/Clopidogrel as antiplatelet therapy, besides advising on smoking cessation, healthy eating of foods with high fibre, and foods with low glycaemic index sources of carbohydrate, increasing physical activity and exercise and self-monitored foot care (Eisenstein et al., 2017; Type 2 Diabetes in adults: management (NG 28), NICE, 2015). Diets containing natural inorganic nitrate have were found to be exogenous sources for the much-needed nitric

oxide in patients suffering from highly inflammatory and oxidative diseases like Type 2 diabetes and evidence has shown that these diets rich in inorganic nitrate are associated with inhibition of platelet aggregation, preservation, and improvement of endothelial dysfunction which may be caused by diabetes in the arterial walls, these include beetroot, usually in the form of a juice, green leafy vegetables such as spinach, rocket and lettuce were also found to contain large sources of inorganic nitrate (Clements et al., 2014; Lundberg et al., 2008; Doel et al., 2005; Hyde et al., 2014). Prior evidence has proven beetroot juice as a popular vasodilator and has been used successfully in the treatment and reduction of blood pressure, in subjects with cardiovascular disease and Type 2 Diabetes as well (Clifford et al., 2015; Siervo et al., 2013; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013; Kenjale et al., 2011), Therefore, it was justifiable to administer beetroot juice to diabetic patients with early-stage PAD in this investigation to assess its effects on the lower limb blood flow with ultrasound peak systolic velocity and blood pressure.

Nitric oxide gas is produced endogenously from the amino acid L-arginine pathway by three isoforms of nitric oxide synthases in the endothelium of blood vessels, and it is useful as an anti-oxidation defence system and an antiplatelet thus inhibiting the acceleration of atherosclerosis (Stamler et al., 1989; Steinberg, 2009, Steinberg and Witzturn, 2010, Cooke, 1996; Stamler, 1989). Beetroot contains inorganic nitrate as the main bioactive component behind the reduction of blood pressure (Webb et al., 2008) and endurance exercise interactions (Vanhatalo et al., 2011) as well. In another study, Gilchrist et al., (2014), administered Beetroot juice (nitrate content 7.5 mmol) versus beetroot juice placebo (nitrate content 0.002 mmol) to type 2 diabetic patients and noted a significant improvement in simple reaction time ( $P < 0.05$ ) in individuals who had blindly ingested beetroot juice with 7.5 mmol inorganic nitrate content compared to those who had blindly ingested placebo beetroot juice, thus strengthening the evidence that inorganic nitrate was the main bioactive component responsible for the noted change.

Following oral consumption of foods rich in inorganic nitrate such as beetroot juice, the nitrate is quickly absorbed in the stomach, duodenum and jejunum and available in the circulation. Later about 25% is excreted in the oral cavity where commensal bacteria anaerobes (via nitrate reductive enzymes) mainly found under the back of the tongue bio-activate nitrate and reduce it to nitrite in saliva (the entero-salivary circulation) and about 75% of the nitrate is excreted via kidneys (Kapil et al., 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2010). When this nitrite is swallowed into the acidic stomach, some of it is bio-activated into nitric oxide then both the nitric oxide and nitrite are rapidly absorbed into the circulation peaking this bioavailability from 2.5 – 3 hrs (Kapil et al., 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008).

The main purpose of the available nitric oxide is to maintain endothelial function in the inner walls of the arteries thus maintaining vascular homeostasis through maintaining the oxidative defence system, platelet function, vascular tone and the delicate balance between vasodilation and vasoconstriction (Clifford et al., 2015; Hobbs et al., 2012; Davignon and Ganz, 2004), thus a depletion in nitric oxide availability has been concluded as the main cause of endothelial dysfunction, a risk factor of cardiovascular disorders and in the pathogenesis of hypertension and atherosclerosis (Lidder et al., 2013; Joris and Mensik, 2013). Beetroot juice has been well researched and is being considered as a promising therapy in a range of clinical pathologies associated with oxidative stress and inflammation (Clifford et al., 2015). Being a source of inorganic nitrate, ingestion of Beetroot juice increases the bioavailability of nitric oxide to manage these pathologies associated with diminished nitric oxide availability, such as diabetes, hypertension, dyslipidaemia to mention a few, thus diminishing the rate of atherosclerosis (Kapil, 2010; Clements et al., 2014; Clifford et al., 2015; Kannady et al., 2012), and in all these studies no known adverse reactions were encountered besides short term effects such as beeturia, red stools, reduction in blood pressure and gastrointestinal discomfort

(Kenjale et al., 2011, Webb et al., 2008, Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013).

Zimbabwe is experiencing the same chronic global problem of the prevalence of diabetes mellitus in its population as well the increased death risk from the complications of diabetes such as PAD in these patients (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016; Hakim et al., 2005). There was no prior evidence establishing the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls using ultrasound during the writing up of this thesis. This investigation, therefore, aimed to provide justifying evidence to fill this existing gap in the literature by utilising duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure. The justification for utilising peak systolic velocity in this investigation was because its robustness in measuring lower limb blood flow was established in the first investigation of this thesis and its ability to demonstrate the effects of early-stage/asymptomatic PAD on the lower limb blood flow of diabetic patients was also established in the second investigation of this thesis.

In this investigation, the aim was to determine if there were detectable acute effects in blood flow post beetroot juice ingestion in diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and the non-diabetic controls using peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure. Evidence from this investigation may be used in the formation of an affordable and cheap therapeutic pathway for managing early-stage PAD in diabetic patients.

## **6.2 Aim**

i) To determine the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow within and between the diabetic lower limb arteries with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls using peak systolic velocity and blood pressure.

### **6.2.1 Research questions**

- i) Is there a change in the blood flow of non-diabetic lower limb arteries after beetroot juice ingestion as determined by peak systolic velocity and blood pressure (at 90minutes; 150 minutes and 210 minutes)?
- ii) Is there a change in the blood flow of diabetic lower limb arteries after beetroot juice ingestion as determined by peak systolic velocity and blood pressure (at 90 minutes; 150 minutes and 210 minutes)?
- iii) Is there a difference in the blood flow changes between non-diabetic and diabetic lower limb arteries after beetroot juice ingestion as determined by peak systolic velocity and blood pressure?

## **6.3 Methodology**

### **6.3.1 Design**

The design for this quasi-experimental investigation is outlined in section 3.3 of this thesis. This investigation was a continuation of the second investigation and the principal investigator carried it out soon after each participant had completed the measurements for the second investigation. The principal investigator imported the socio-demographic history and Ankle-brachial Index values from the second investigation into this investigation. Again, the principal investigator imported the duplex ultrasound findings for peak systolic velocity of the popliteal artery for each participant from the second investigation as basal blood flow findings in this investigation. However, the principal investigator also assessed the basal systolic and diastolic blood pressure for each participant for this investigation before they were administered beetroot juice for ingestion.

Prior evidence has shown beetroot juice as effective in reducing blood pressure, (Clifford et al., 2015; Gilchrist et al., 2013; Bahadoran et al., 2015; Kenjale et al., 2011; Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008), thus the principal investigator instructed the patients not to take blood pressure medications in

the morning of the examination day to avoid masking the true effects of beetroot juice on blood pressure. However, the principal investigator instructed the participants to take their blood pressure medications after undertaking the last blood pressure measurement at 210 minutes after ingesting beetroot juice only if their blood pressure did not fall in the normal range of

$\frac{120-130}{80-90}$  mmHg or slightly lower.

9

All the participants in both groups had already provided written informed consent forms for participation which were approved by the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe and the Salford University Ethics board to the principal investigator during the undertaking of the second investigation.

### **6.3.2 Population and Sampling**

The principal investigator imported the sample for both groups for this investigation from the second investigation and the criteria for having early-stage PAD was still the same as outlined in section 5.3.4 of chapter 5 of this thesis. In this case, transfer bias from the second investigation to this investigation was minimised since each participant simply continued from the second into this investigation on the same day before being dismissed to go home.

### **6.3.3 Participants**

The participants of this investigation were imported from the second investigation by the principal investigator. See section 5.3.4 chapter 5 of thesis for more detail on the demographic data and sections 3.4 and 5.3.5 for the outlined justification for the inclusion and exclusion criteria utilised for this investigation.



## **6.4 Data collection procedures**

### **6.4.1 Body Mass Index measurements**

The Body Mass Index and Ankle Brachial Index measurements which were performed in the second investigation were imported into this investigation. See section 4.4 of chapter 4 and section 3.7 of chapter 3 of this thesis for more detail.

### **6.4.2 Duplex Ultrasound and Blood pressure measurements**

After the completion of the measurements for the second investigation, each participant continued into this investigation. The diabetic clinic-based physician was on stand by for the monitoring of any anaphylactic reactions to beetroot juice ingestion which could have been elicited by the participants and the principal investigator had in place the correct protocol of management with the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe to cater for any adverse reactions taking place in any participants following ingestion of the beetroot juice intervention. See Appendix J for more detail on the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe adverse reactions form.

The research assistants instructed each participant to relax on the examination bed for about 10 minutes in a supine position to allow a stable heart rate for a stable basal blood flow in the participants' lower limbs arteries.

The principal investigator then measured the participants' blood pressure at rest from the non-dependent upper arm at a similar position for each participant with an automated blood pressure machine (CareVue, Shenzhen, China), and recorded the basal systolic and diastolic blood pressure values while the research assistants later collated the blood pressure readings with each participant's anonymous code.

Concurrently the blood flow results for peak systolic velocity from the second investigation (Section 5.6.3 of in chapter 5) were collated as the baseline readings for each participant in this investigation by the research assistants.

After completion of basal blood pressure, the research assistants instructed each participant to sit in the waiting area and administered 500 ml of beetroot juice (7.38 mmol beetroot juice nitrate) orally to each of them. See Figure 1 in chapter 1 of this thesis for the type of beetroot juice administered in this investigation. However, the principal investigator allowed the diabetic patients to take their medication together with beetroot juice and the justification for this is outlined in section 3.6 of this thesis.

The research assistants instructed each participant to relax for the initial 80 minutes to allow for the digestion and processing of beetroot juice in the stomach (Kapil et al, 2010; Vanhatalo et al, 2010). After the initial 80 minutes of relaxing following beetroot juice ingestion, the research assistants helped each participant back on the couch and allowed them another 10 minutes supine rest on the couch to enable the participants to achieve a stable heart rate. The principal investigator then started measuring the participants' blood pressure in the non-dependant arm upper followed by blood flow measurements in the right lower limb using peak systolic velocity at 90 minutes, 150 minutes and 210 minutes post beetroot juice intake respectively.

Blood flow and blood pressure measurements were started at 90 minutes after beetroot juice ingestions to allow the capturing of the earlier effects of beetroot juice on blood flow even though prior evidence has shown that presumed vasodilation from orally administered beetroot juice occurred after about 180 minutes (Kapil et al, 2010; Vanhatalo et al, 2010). A pre-set alarm was put in place with the respective timings by the research assistants to enable effective and smooth flow of timing across the three-time points after beetroot juice intake.

The same principal investigator from the first and second investigations measured the blood flow and the blood pressure in this investigation and this minimised performance bias. For each participant, the principal investigator recorded the values for peak systolic velocity measurements in the archives of the duplex ultrasound machine for each time slot thus at 90 minutes, 150 minutes and finally at 210 minutes under the anonymised codes for each participant. Later the research assistants collated the anonymised coded peak systolic velocity measurements for each patient with their blood pressure measurements and demographic data in Microsoft Excel sheets.

After the principal investigator measured and recorded the blood pressure for each participant at 210 minutes post beetroot juice ingestion, and if the blood pressure was found to be within the normal range values (Equation 9; Eisenstein et al., 2017) then the principal investigator advised the participant not to take their blood pressure reducing medications on that day but to resume on the following day to avoid reducing the blood pressure below the normal range.

The scanning technique utilised by the principal investigator to assess the popliteal arteries in this investigation is outlined in section 3.8 of chapter 3 of this thesis.

After the all the measurements were completed, the research assistants gave each participant a refreshment of 100% pure juice and low sugar biscuit and instructed the participants to relax in the ultrasound department for about 20 minutes before dismissing them home.

## **6.5 Statistical analyses**

The principal investigator imported the demographic data which was analysed from the second investigation into this investigation. See section 5.6 for more detail on the statistical analysis of demographic data which was done in the second investigation (Table 5).

The principal investigator performed a two-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) (2 x 4; group x time) and post - hoc analysis using the Benferroni test to compare the two groups thus diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls across 4-time points enabling the comparison of combined groups effects at specific time points after the ingestion of beetroot juice. This was undertaken by the principal investigator in a bid to answer research question three which sought to determine if there was a difference in blood flow between the two groups with time as indicated by dependent variables (peak systolic velocity and blood pressure). The principal investigator performed two samples *t*-test and Cohen's *d* effect sizes to compare the means of dependent variables between groups at each specific time point to establish if these differences were significant and meaningful and an a priori alpha was set at 0.05 level of significance.

Again, the principal investigator performed one-sample *t*-test and Cohen's *d* effect sizes to compare the means of dependent variables within each group between specific time points within each group and Cohen's *d* effect sizes were performed to establish if these differences were significant and meaningful. One sample *t*-test and two samples *t*-test were performed to try and answer research questions 1 and 2 which sought to determine any change in blood flow within groups and between groups at specific time points respectively as determined by the dependent variables (peak systolic velocity and blood pressure) after beetroot juice ingestion. See section 5.5 for more detail on the effect sizes which were set for this investigation.

## 6.6 Results

### 6.6.1 Demographic findings

In a cohort of 71 Black-African participants, 36 (51%) were non-diabetic controls and 35 (49%) were diabetic participants with early-stage PAD. Since the principal investigator imported the participants for this investigation from the second investigation, therefore the demographic findings were similarly the same as outlined in section 5.6.1 table 6.

### 6.6.2 Combined groups peak systolic velocity changes after beetroot juice ingestion at specific time points.

Combined group effects for peak systolic velocity showed a significant change ( $\text{diff} \leq 12.3 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P \leq 0.0001$ ) between the baseline and 90 minutes time point, the baseline and 150 minutes time point ( $\text{diff}; 14.0 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P \leq 0.0001$ ), the baseline and 210 minutes time point ( $\text{diff} = 20.0 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P \leq 0.0001$ ) and the 150 minutes and 210 minutes time point ( $\text{diff} = 6.0 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P < 0.0001$ ). However there was no significant change in peak systolic velocity ( $\text{diff} = 0.4 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P = 1.00$ ) between the 90 minutes and 150 minutes time point after beetroot juice ingestions (table 11).

**Table 11 Combined groups' peak systolic velocity changes after beetroot juice ingestion at specific time points (Benferroni).**

	<b>baseline</b>	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>150 minutes</b>
<b>90 minutes</b>	-12.3 cm/s (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000		
<b>150 minutes</b>	-14.0 cm/s (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000	-2.0 cm/s (diff) <i>P</i> = 1.000	
<b>210 minutes</b>	-20.0 cm/s (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000	-8.0 cm/s (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000	-6.0 cm/s (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000
<i>Diff</i> = mean difference; <i>p</i> = value			

### **6.6.3 Peak systolic velocity comparisons between groups at specific time points.**

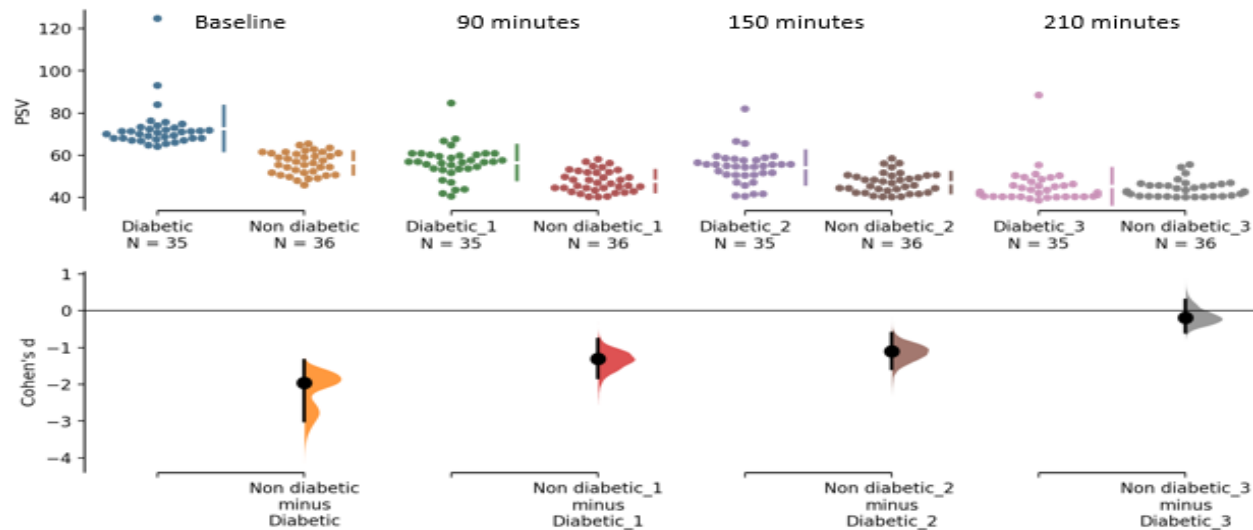
Between groups, peak systolic velocity was significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P < 0.0001$ ;  $d = 1.95$ ) in diabetic patients ( $73.0 \pm 11.0$  cm/s) compared to non-diabetic patients ( $56.3 \pm 5.3$  cm/s) basally. After beetroot juice ingestions at 90 minutes peak systolic velocity was again significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P < 0.0001$ ;  $d = 1.30$ ) in diabetic patients ( $57.0 \pm 8.1$  cm/s) compared to non-diabetic patients ( $48.0 \pm 5.2$  cm/s). At 150 minutes peak systolic velocity was still significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P < 0.0001$ ;  $d = 1.10$ ) in diabetic patients ( $54.1 \pm 8.0$  cm/s) compared to non-diabetic patients ( $47.0 \pm 5.0$  cm/s). However, at 210 minutes there was neither a significant nor meaningful difference ( $P = 0.4$ ;  $d = 0.18$ ) in peak systolic velocity between diabetic patients ( $45.2 \pm 9.0$  cm/s) compared to non-diabetic patients ( $44.0 \pm 4.0$  cm/s) (Table 12 ; Figure 12).

**Table 12 Comparison of peak systolic velocity changes between groups at specific time points**

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Mean (sd) Non-diabetics</b>	<b>Mean (sd) diabetics</b>	<b>T-test p-value</b>	<b>%mean difference</b>	<b>Cohen's d Effect</b>
PSV baseline	56.3 (5.3)cm/s	73.0 (11.0)cm/s	<0.0001	16.2%	1.95
PSV 90 minutes	48.0 (5.1)cm/s	57.0 (8.1)cm/s	<0.0001	9.0%	1.30
PSV 150 minutes	47.0 (5.0)cm/s	54.1 (8.0)cm/s	<0.0001	7.2%	1.10
PSV 210minutes	44.0 (4)cm/s	45.2 (9)cm/s	0.4	1.2%	0.18



#### 6.6.4 Peak systolic velocity change within groups at specific time points



**Figure 12** Shows peak systolic velocity change after beetroot ingestions within and between groups.

**Key:** PSV- Peak Systolic velocity

Within groups, peak systolic velocity decreased significantly and meaningfully ( $P \leq 0.0001$ ;  $d \leq 1.95$ ) at 90 minutes and 210 minutes after beetroot juice ingestions within diabetic patients and non-diabetic patients similarly. However, no significant or meaningful decrease ( $p > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 1.10$ ) occurred at 150 minutes time point after beetroot juice intake within both groups (figure 12; table 13).

**Table 13 Comparison of peak systolic velocity changes at specific time points within groups.**

Diabetic patients					
Parameter	baseline	90 minutes	% mean difference	T-test p-value	Cohen's d effect size
PSV	73.0 (11.0) cm/s	57.0 (8.1) cm/s	16.1%	<0.0001	1.70
	90 minutes	150 minutes			
	57.0 (8.1) cm/s	54.1 (8.0) cm/s	3.0%	0.2	0.29
	150 minutes	210 minutes			
	54.1 (8.0) cm/s	46.0 (9.0) cm/s	9%	<0.0001	1.08
Non - diabetic participants					
PSV	baseline	90 minutes	% mean Difference	T-test p-value	Cohen's d effect size
	56.3(5.3) cm/s	47.0 (5.1)	9%	<0.0001	1.66
	90 minutes	150 minutes			
	47.0 (5.1) cm/s	47.0 (5.0)	1.0%	0.5	0.15
	150 minutes	210 minutes			
	47.0 (5.0) cm/s	44.0 (4.0) cm/s	3%	0.01	0.67

### 6.6.5 Combined groups systolic Blood pressure changes to beetroot juice ingestion at specific time points.

Combined group effects for systolic blood pressure showed a significant change between the baseline and 90 minutes time point (*diff* = 13.0 mmHg; *P* <0.0001), baseline and 150 minutes time point (*diff* = 14.3 mmHg; *P* = 0.0001); baseline and 210 minutes time point (*diff* = 22.0; *P* <0.0001) and between the 150 minutes to 210 minutes time point (*diff* = 8.0 mmHg; *P* = 0.01) after beetroot juice ingestions. However, there was no significant change in systolic blood pressure at the 90 minutes and 150 minutes time point (*diff* = 1.2 mmHg; *P* = 1.00) (Table 14).

**Table 14: Combined group effects for systolic blood pressure changes after beetroot juice ingestion at specific time points (Benferroni).**

	<b>Baseline</b>	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>150 minutes</b>
<b>90 minutes</b>	-13.0 mmHg (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000		
<b>150 minutes</b>	-14.3 mmHg (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000	-1.2 mmHg (diff) <i>P</i> = 1.000	
<b>210 minutes</b>	-22.1 mmHg (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.000	-9.1 mmHg (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.001	-8.0 mmHg (diff) <i>P</i> = 0.009
<i>Diff</i> = mean difference; <i>p</i> = value			

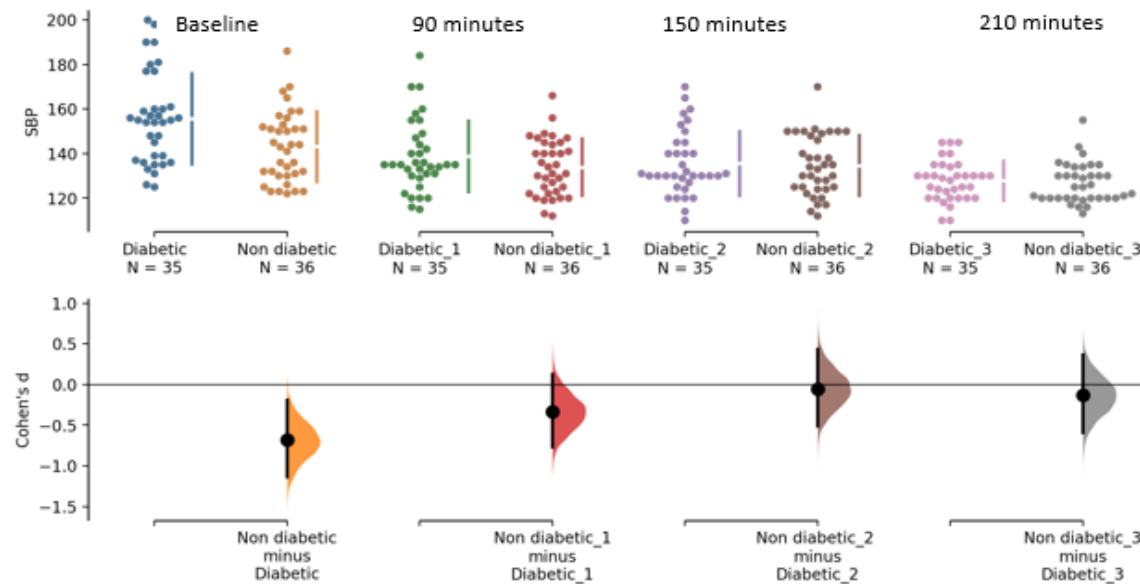
### 6.6.6 Comparison of systolic blood pressure changes between groups at specific time points.

Systolic Blood Pressure was significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P = 0.005$ ;  $d = 0.68$ ) in the diabetic patients ( $156.0 \pm 20.3 \text{ mmHg}$ ) compared to non-diabetic patients ( $143.1 \pm 16.0 \text{ mmHg}$ ) basally. At 90 minutes after beetroot juice intake there was no significant/meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.34$ ) in SBP between diabetic patients ( $139.0 \pm 16.0 \text{ mmHg}$ ) and non-diabetic patients ( $134.0 \pm 13.0 \text{ mmHg}$ ). At 150 minutes after beetroot juice intake, there was no significant or meaningful difference in SBP ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.06$ ) between diabetic patients ( $135.4 \pm 14.4 \text{ mmHg}$ ) and non-diabetic patients ( $135.0 \pm 13.4 \text{ mmHg}$ ). At 210 minutes after beetroot juice intake again there was no significant or meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.13$ ) between diabetic patients ( $128.0 \pm 9.0 \text{ mmHg}$ ) and non-diabetic patients ( $127.0 \pm 9.0 \text{ mmHg}$ ) (Table 15; Figure 13).

**Table 15 Comparison of systolic blood pressure changes between groups at specific time points.**

Parameter	Non - diabetics	Diabetics	T-test p value	% mean difference	Cohen's d effect sizes.
SBP baseline	143.1 (16.0) mmHg	156.0 (20.3) mmHg	0.01	12%	0.68
SBP 90 minutes	134.0 (13.0) mmHg	139.0 (16.0) mmHg	0.2	5.0%	0.34
SBP 150 minutes	135.0 (13.4) mmHg	135.4 (14.4) mmHg	1.0	1%	0.06
SBP 210 minutes	127.0 (9.0) mmHg	128.0 (9.0) mmHg	1.0	1.2%	0.13

### 6.6.7 Systolic Blood Pressure change within groups at specific time points.



**Figure13** shows systolic blood pressure change after beetroot juice ingestions both within and between groups.

**Key:** SBP- Systolic Blood pressure

Within groups, systolic blood pressure reduced significantly and meaningfully ( $P \leq 0.01$ ;  $d \leq 0.92$ ) at 90 minutes and similarly at 210 minutes time point after beetroot juice ingestions within both the diabetic and the non-diabetic groups. However, no significant or meaningful decrease ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.15$ ) occurred at 150 minutes after beetroot juice ingestions within both groups (figures 13; Table 16).

**Table 16 Systolic Blood Pressure change within groups at specific time points.**

<b>Diabetic participants</b>					
<b>SBP</b>	<b>baseline</b>	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>%mean difference</b>	<b>T-test p-value</b>	<b>Cohen's d effect sizes</b>
	156.0 (20.3) mmHg	139.0 (16.0) mmHg	17%	<0.001	0.92
	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>150 minutes</b>			
	139.0 (16.0) mmHg	135.4 (14.4) mmHg	3.3%	0.4	0.22
	<b>150 minutes</b>	<b>210 minutes</b>			
	135.4 (14.4) mmHg	128.0 (9.0) mmHg	8.0%	0.01	0.64
<b>Non-diabetic participants</b>					
<b>SBP</b>	<b>baseline</b>	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>%Mean difference</b>	<b>T-test p-value</b>	<b>Cohen's d effect sizes</b>
	143.1 (16.0) mmHg	134.0 (13.0) mmHg	9.3%	0.01	0.65
	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>150 minutes</b>			
	134.0 (13.0) mmHg	135.0 (13.4) mmHg	0.8%	0.8	0.06
	<b>150 minutes</b>	<b>210 minutes</b>			
	135 (13.4) mmHg	127.0 (9.0) mmHg	8%	<0.0001	0.70

#### 6.6.8 Combined groups diastolic blood pressure changes after beetroot juice ingestion at specific time points.

Combined group effects for diastolic blood pressure showed a significant change between the baseline and 90 minutes time point (*diff* = -7.1 mmHg;  $P \leq 0.0001$ ), baseline and 150 minutes time point (*diff* = 8.4 mmHg;  $P = 0.0001$ ); baseline and 210 minutes time point (*diff* = 13.4 mmHg;  $P = 0.0001$ ) and between the 150 minutes and 210 minutes time point (*diff* = 5.0 mmHg;  $P = 0.001$ ). However, there was no significant change in diastolic blood pressure between the 90 minutes and 150 minutes time point (*diff* = 1.3 mmHg;  $P = 1.00$ ) after beetroot juice ingestions (Table 17).

**Table 17 Combined groups' diastolic blood pressure changes after beetroot juice ingestion at specific time points (Benferroni).**

	<b>baseline</b>	<b>90 minutes</b>	<b>150 minutes</b>
<b>90 minutes</b>	-7.1 mmHg ( <i>diff</i> ) $P = 0.000$		
<b>150 minutes</b>	-8.4 mmHg ( <i>diff</i> ) $P = 0.000$	-1.3 mmHg ( <i>diff</i> ) $P = 1.000$	
<b>210 minutes</b>	-13.4 mmHg $P = 0.000$	-6.3 mmHg ( <i>diff</i> ) $P = 0.000$	-5.0 mmHg ( <i>diff</i> ) $P = 0.001$
<i>Diff</i> = mean difference; <i>p</i> = value			



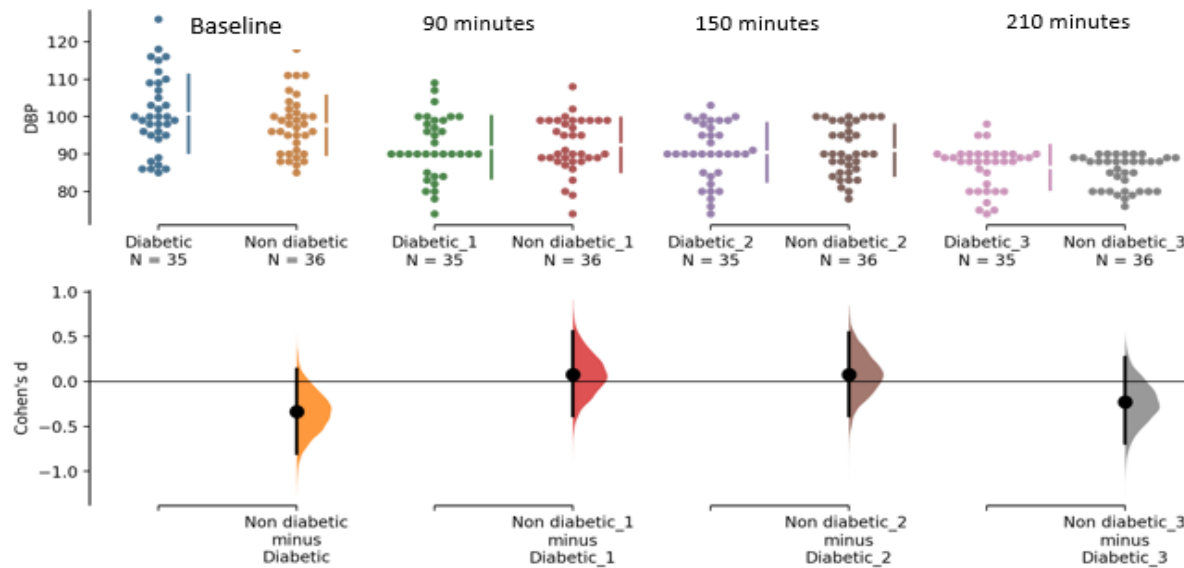
### 6.6.9 Comparison of diastolic blood pressure change at specific time points within groups.

Between groups, basal diastolic blood pressure did not show a significant/meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.33$ ) between diabetic patients ( $101.0 \pm 10.2$  mmHg) and non-diabetic patients ( $98.0 \pm 8.0$  mmHg). At 90 minutes after beetroot juice intake there was no significant or meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.08$ ) between diabetic patients ( $92.0 \pm 8.2$  mmHg) and non-diabetic patients ( $92.4 \pm 7.2$  mmHg). At 150 minutes after beetroot juice intake there was no significant or meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.08$ ) between diabetic patients ( $91.0 \pm 8.0$  mmHg) and non-diabetic patients ( $91.1 \pm 7.0$  mmHg). At 210 minutes after beetroot juice intake there was no significant or meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d = 0.23$ ) between diabetic patients ( $86.4 \pm 6.0$  mmHg) and non-diabetic patients ( $85.2 \pm 4.4$  mmHg) (Table 18; Figure 14).

**Table 18 Comparison of diastolic blood pressure change between groups at specific time points.**

Parameter	Non - diabetics	Diabetics	T-test p-value	% Mean difference	Cohen's d effect sizes
DBP baseline	98.0 (8.0) mmHg	100.7 (10.2) mmHg	0.2	3.1%	0.33
DBP 90mins	92.4 (7.2) mmHg	92.0 (8.2) mmHg	0.7	1.0%	0.08
DBP 150mins	91.1 (7.0) mmHg	90.5 (8.0) mmHg	0.7	0.6%	0.08
DBP 210mins	85.2 (4.4) mmHg	86.4 (6.0) mmHg	0.3	1.1%	0.23

#### 6.6.10 Diastolic blood pressure changes within groups at specific time points.



**Figure 14** show diastolic blood pressure change within and between groups

**Key:** DBP – Diastolic Blood Pressure

Within groups, diastolic blood pressure decreased significantly and meaningfully ( $P \leq 0.02$ ;  $d \leq 1.02$ ) at 90 minutes and 210 minutes *after* beetroot juice ingestions within both groups. However, no significant/meaningful decrease ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.19$ ) was seen at 90 minutes to 150 minutes after Beetroot juice ingestion by both groups (figure 14; table 19).

**Table 19:** shows a comparison of diastolic blood pressure changes at specific time points within groups.

Non – diabetic participants					
DBP	baseline	90 minutes	% mean difference	T-test p-value	Cohen's d effect sizes
	98.0 (8.0) mmHg	92.4 (7.2) mmHg	5.3%	<0.0001	0.70
	90 minutes	150 minutes			
	92.1 (7.2) mmHg	91.1 (8.0) mmHg	1.4%	0.4	0.19
	150 minutes	210 minutes			
	91.0(8.0) mmHg	85.2 (4.4)mmHg	6.0%	<0.0001	1.02
Diabetic participants					
DBP	baseline	90 minutes	% mean difference	T-test p-value	Cohen's d effect sizes
	101.0(10.3) mmHg	92.0(8.3) mmHg	9.0%	<0.0001	0.96
	90 minutes	150 minutes			
	92.0 (8.3) mmHg	90.5 (8.0)mmHg	1.3%	0.5	0.16
	150 minutes	210 minutes			
	90.5 (8.0)mmHg	86.4 mmHg	4.1%	0.02	0.60

## 6.7 Discussion

In this investigation, within groups, peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure reduced significantly and meaningfully from baseline to 90 minutes and from 150 minutes to 210 minutes ( $P \leq 0.01$ ;  $d \leq 1.70$ ) after beetroot juice ingestion. However, no significant or meaningful change ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.29$ ) occurred in peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure from 90 minutes to 150 minutes after beetroot juice ingestion.

The findings in this investigation suggested that short term effects of beetroot juice ingestion resulted in improved blood flow as reflected by reduced peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure in both groups across all time points after beetroot juice ingestion. Prior studies have been undertaken on assessing the short term effects of beetroot juice within an intervention period ranging from 3 hours to about 15 days and the acute effects established were on blood pressure and exercise endurance, while no prior studies were yet done on the effects of beetroot juice on blood flow using peak systolic velocity during the writing up of this thesis.

A study by Bahra et al., (2012), showed similar findings of improved vascular compliance signalling improved blood flow when conducted in hypertensive patients after ingestion of nitrate salts. Improved vascular compliance was reflected by a reduction in aortic pulse wave velocity and reduction in systolic blood pressure, while this investigation showed improved blood flow through reduced peak systolic velocity and reduction of blood pressure in diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls after ingestion of beetroot juice. These concurring findings justify the presence of a similar ingredient in beetroot juice and potassium nitrate salts which resulted in desirable improved blood flow effects in both hypertensive and diabetic patients.

The findings in this investigation showed improved blood flow in the asymptomatic diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls after 3 hours post beetroot juice ingestion as a clinically significant benefit and these findings prompted for long term assessment of chronic beetroot juice intake by diabetic patients with early-stage PAD as a post-doctoral study. Such improvements in blood flow if the long term could result in the reduction of medications needed to relieve impaired blood flow and those needed to reduce elevated blood pressure in diabetic patients. This improved blood flow after ingestion of beetroot juice carries the benefit of adaptation to exercise (Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008) and physical activity by patients with early-stage PAD thus improving their health management.

Between groups, peak systolic velocity and systolic blood pressure were significantly and meaningfully higher ( $P \leq 0.04$ ;  $d \leq 1.95$ ) in diabetic patients at baseline. However, at 90 minutes and 150 minutes peak systolic velocity remained higher in diabetic patients ( $P \leq 0.04$ ;  $d \leq 1.30$ ) unlike systolic blood pressure ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.34$ ). At 210 minutes after beetroot juice ingestions peak systolic velocity and systolic blood pressure showed no significant or meaningful change in diabetics and non-diabetics ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.18$ ). Diastolic blood pressure showed no significant or meaningful difference ( $P > 0.05$ ;  $d \leq 0.33$ ) between the groups at all the time points after beetroot juice ingestions.

Peak systolic velocity and systolic blood pressure showed a clinically significant change in blood between groups across all time points after intake of beetroot juice since their percentage (%) mean difference (less or equal to 22.1%) was higher than the smallest detectable difference (SDD %) from the first investigation (9.2%). However, diastolic blood pressure did not show a clinically significant change in blood flow between groups across all the time points since its percentage (%) mean difference (less or equal to 3.1%) was lower than the smallest detectable difference (SDD %) from the first investigation (9.2%).

In the comparison for combined effects, peak systolic velocity showed a significant change ( $\text{diff} \leq 19.7 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P \leq 0.0001$ ) between the baseline and 90 minutes, baseline and 150 minutes, baseline and 210 minutes, and finally 150 minutes and 210 minutes time points. However, there was no significant change in peak systolic velocity ( $\text{diff} = 0.4 \text{ cm/s}$ ;  $P = 1.00$ ) between the 90 minutes and 150 minutes time point after beetroot juice ingestions. The combined effects for systolic blood pressure showed a significant change ( $\text{diff} \leq 22.0 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P < 0.0001$ ) between baseline and 90 minutes, baseline and 150 minutes, baseline and 210 minutes and finally 150 minutes to 210 minutes time points after beetroot juice ingestions. However, there was no significant change in systolic blood pressure during the 90 minutes to 150 minutes time point ( $\text{diff} = 1.2 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P = 1.00$ ). Diastolic blood pressure showed a significant change ( $\text{diff} \leq 13.4 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P < 0.0001$ ) between baseline and 90 minutes, baseline and 150 minutes, baseline and 210 minutes, and 150 minutes and 210 minutes time points after beetroot juice ingestions. However, there was no significant change in diastolic blood pressure between the 90 minutes and 150 minutes time point ( $\text{diff} = 1.3 \text{ mmHg}$ ;  $P = 1.00$ ) after beetroot juice ingestions.

These findings are in line with the research question of this study which sought to determine if the peak systolic velocity alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure were capable of demonstrating the acute effects of beetroot juice on blood flow within groups and between groups across time points while a significant and meaningful difference in blood flow was interpreted as the capability to show the acute effects of beetroot juice across the time points. The statistically significant and meaningful difference reflected by peak systolic, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure at 90 minutes after beetroot juice intake could be due to an increment in volume of blood after ingestion of 500 ml of beetroot juice while at 150 minutes after beetroot juice ingestions there was no significant change in peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure probably due to

the continual flow of blood which brought back its volume to the baseline level. However, the significant and meaningful differences/ changes later noted in peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure during the 150 minutes – 210 minutes time point after beetroot juice ingestion could have been being the ones showing the true acute effects of the beetroot juice on the blood flow of the popliteal arteries of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls.

Prior studies (Web et al., 2008; Bailey et al., 2009, 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Gilchrist et al., 2011; Lansely et al., 2011) have shown the effects of beetroot juice intake as reduced systolic blood pressure at least 3 hours post-ingestion and most of the studies were done in healthy normotensive individuals. During the writing up of this thesis, there was no prior study which showed the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow by utilising duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity in individuals who were at greater cardiovascular risk (Siervo et al., 2013; Ogbonmwan et al., 2012). This investigation has shown the evidence of improved blood flow as reflected by reduced peak systolic velocity and reduced systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure during the 2 ½ -3 ½ hours' time point in individuals at a greater risk of cardiovascular disease (diabetic patients with early-stage PAD) after ingestion of beetroot juice.

Beetroot juice studies have confirmed the bioavailability of nitrite and nitric oxide from the nitrate in beetroot juice as being at less or equal to 3 hrs (180 minutes) -post-ingestion (Kapil et al., 2010; Kenjale et al., 2011; Webb et al., 2008; Vanhatalo et al., 2010). Similarly in this investigation, peak systolic velocity, diastolic blood pressure and systolic blood pressure showed a significant difference in blood flow both in diabetic patients and non-diabetic patients from 150 minutes to 210 minutes (2 ½ - 3 ½ hours) time point after beetroot juice ingestion.

In this investigation, the fact that no significant or meaningful difference was found between groups after 210 minutes (3 ½ hours) could also mean the peak presence of the acute effects of beetroot juice in the blood for both groups. These findings could be owed to the peak bioavailability of nitrite and nitric oxide in the bloodstream after digestion and excretion of the beetroot juice nitrate (Kapil et al., 2010, Kenjale et al., 2011).

This investigation noted a reduction in the peak systolic velocity of the popliteal arteries in diabetic patients ( $73.0 \pm 11.0$  cm/s pre to  $45.2 \pm 9.0$  cm/s during 2 ½ to 3 ½ hrs post 500ml beetroot juice ingestion;  $p < 0.05$ ) and a reduction of peak systolic velocity in the popliteal arteries of non-diabetic patients ( $57.0 \pm 5.3$  cm/s pre to  $44 \pm 4.0$  cm/s during 2 ½ to 3 ½ hours post beetroot juice ingestion). Similarly, this investigation also noted a reduction in systolic blood pressure in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD ( $156.0 \pm 20.3$  mmHg pre to  $128.0 \pm 9.0$  mmHg during 2 ½ -3 ½ hours post-Beetroot Juice intake;  $p < 0.05$ ) and a reduction in non-diabetic controls ( $143.4 \pm 16.0$  mmHg pre to  $127.0 \pm 9.0$  mmHg during 2 ½ -3 ½ hours post-Beetroot Juice ingestion,  $p < 0.05$ ). Concurring with these findings, other studies (Hobbs et al., 2012; Kapil et al., 2015) also noted a reduction in systolic blood pressure (% mean difference = 20.5%) and a reduction in diastolic blood pressure (% mean difference = 14.6%) at about 2 - 3 hours post-ingestion of 5.7 mmol beetroot juice. However a reduction in pulse wave velocity in hypertensive patients after dietary nitrate consumption by 0.59 m/s (95% CI 0.2 - 0.9;  $p < 0.01$ ) compared to baseline values and 0.6 m/s (95% CI 0.1 - 1.1;  $p < 0.05$ ) compared to placebo was shown by Kapil et al., 2015).

## **6.8 Strengths and limitations.**

The strength of this investigation was that the principal investigator carried it out under controlled settings and which limited transfer, recall, selection and misclassification of exposure factors bias and measurement error. An example was the objective selection of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD using



reactive hyperaemic testing and also the prior preparations by participants before the undertaking of blood pressure and blood flow measurements and the beetroot juice intervention. Prior studies assessing the effects of beetroot juice (Kenjale et al., 2011; Kapil et al., 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2011; Webb et al., 2008; Bailey et al., 2010) accordingly put such similar measures and controls in place.

Performance bias was limited during the gathering of data since the same principal investigator holding more than 5 years' experience in vascular ultrasound imaging is the one who performed the duplex ultrasound and blood pressure measurements in this investigation while blinded to the final collation of these findings with the participants' anonymously coded demographic data which was undertaken by the research assistants.

Recall bias was limited since principal investigator measured values for ultrasound parameters and blood pressure and stored them in the archives of the sonar machine but was blinded to the collation of these values with the participants' anonymous codes and this was done by the research assistants. The control measures (Kapil et al., 2010; Vanhatalo et al., 2011) utilised in this thesis also contributed to effective screening for the sample of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD for this investigation and thus minimising bias due to misclassification of exposure and outcomes, while prior patient preparations also allowed basal blood flow to be similar in all participants before the ingestion of the beetroot juice intervention to reduce measurement error.

The principal investigator made the following decisions which resulted as weaknesses in the third and final investigation of this thesis;

i) Dropping further assessment of the dorsalis pedis artery during the first investigation due to lack of reproducibility of the vessel diameter inner to inner measurements.

ii) Dropping pulsatility index from further analysis in the third investigation due to reasons of increased variability displayed in the second investigation.

iii) Dropping, resistive index from further assessment in the third investigation despite it coming out as robust in the second investigation to enable a more focussed assessment of peak systolic velocity in assessing acute effects of beetroot juice in the popliteal arteries only since the blood flow effects quickly waned away in this investigation.

The three decisions made by the principal investigator after the first and second investigations then resulted in this investigation showing findings of the acute effects of beetroot juice in the popliteal arteries only with the exclusion of the posterior tibial and anterior tibial arteries while peak systolic velocity was the only duplex ultrasound parameter which was finally utilised in this investigation alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure. Therefore, the principal investigator will determine findings for the resistive index in the anterior tibial and posterior tibial arteries later in post-doctoral studies.

## **6.9 Internal and external validity**

The budget for this investigation was limited such that the principal investigator could not afford to draw a wider heterogeneous sample which could include other populations resident in Zimbabwe to justify its external validity and generalisability to the whole Zimbabwean population. However, the principal investigator put in place a tight inclusion and exclusion criteria thus the investigation had high internal validity and the findings could be generalised to the Zimbabwean Black/African population of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and the non-diabetic controls. However, external validity was limited in this investigation since the sample was not heterogeneous and did not include other populations resident in Zimbabwe besides Black/Africans.

## **6.10 Conclusions**

The findings of this investigation concluded that the acute effects of beetroot juice in the popliteal arteries of Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls reflected as reduced peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure during the 150 - 210 minutes time point. However, peak systolic velocity also showed a clinically significant change in blood flow between groups which was not shown by systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure.

## **6.11 Recommendations**

From the findings of this investigation, the principal investigator recommended the ingestion of beetroot juice by asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic participants to enable improved blood flow and better management of blood pressure. However, the principal investigator will need to augment these findings after the undertaking of post-doctoral work assessing the long term effects of beetroot juice ingestion by these diabetic patients who are at a greater risk for cardiovascular diseases.

The principal investigator also recommended the utilisation of duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity to monitor long term effects of beetroot juice ingestion by asymptomatic diabetic patients after it demonstrated a clinically significant and meaningful change in blood flow between groups in this investigation.

## **6.12 Implications**

The findings of this investigation imply that the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion result in improved blood flow and reduced blood pressure as reflected by duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity, systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure.

The findings of this investigation showed that ingestion of beetroot juice resulted in clinically significant changes in blood flow as demonstrated by peak systolic velocity thereby implying that beetroot juice ingestion has short term therapeutic effects in both diabetic patients as well as non-diabetic controls which may need pursuing in long term ingestion of beetroot juice.

### **6.13 Decision making for areas of future research (post-doctoral)**

The principal investigator decided to undertake a longitudinal multi-centre post-doctoral study which embraces a heterogeneous Zimbabwean population. This study will pursue the long term effects of beetroot juice ingestion by asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls using duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and resistive index together with blood pressure measurements to improve on the external validity and generalisability of these findings to the Zimbabwean population.

## **Chapter 7 - Overall thesis discussion**

### **7.1 Introduction**

The principal investigator carried out the methodology of this thesis as three separate experimental investigations which built into each other. In the first investigation, the principal investigator determined the repeatability of the duplex ultrasound parameters in measuring lower limb blood flow in 10 asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. In this first investigation repeatability of duplex ultrasound parameters was quantified through the determination of their within and between sessions reliability and measurement error. The findings of the first investigation established duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index as robust parameters with the exclusion of vessel diameter inner to inner in the measurement of blood flow in the popliteal arteries, posterior tibial arteries and anterior tibial arteries.

In the second investigation, the principal investigator determined the robustness of the statistically significant ultrasound parameters from the first investigation in demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of 35 diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls. The findings of the second investigation established peak systolic velocity and resistive index as the robust duplex ultrasound parameters in demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD in the popliteal arteries, anterior tibial arteries and posterior tibial arteries except for pulsatility index.

In the third investigation, the principal investigator determined the effects of beetroot juice ingestion on the lower limb arteries blood flow of the two groups of participants imported from the second investigation using the emerging robust peak systolic velocity from the second investigation together with systolic and diastolic blood pressure across three-time points thus the baseline – 90 minutes; 90 minutes – 150 minutes; and finally the 150 minutes – 210 minutes. The findings of the third investigation established the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion as reduced blood pressure and improved blood flow

in the popliteal arteries of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls.

## **7.2 Overall thesis Findings**

The first investigation of this thesis showed that the ultrasound parameters consisting of peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index were repeatable in assessing blood flow in the lower limb arteries of diabetics with early-stage PAD due to their demonstration of good to excellent reliability, low variability and an acceptably low standard error of measurement (SEM) and smallest detectable difference (SDD %) except for vessel diameter inner to inner. The findings of the first investigation of this thesis concurred with the findings of prior reliability studies which have shown minimum variability low SEM (Thomas et al., 2015; Sheppard et al., 2011) as well as good to excellent reliability (Koo and Lee, 2016). Eiberg et al., (2010) showed an acceptable magnitude of the measurement error and reliability of duplex ultrasound in diabetic patients with late-stage PAD. However, no evidence was found on the assessment of the repeatability of duplex ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in diabetic patients with early-stage PAD during the writing of this thesis. Thus, the findings of this thesis have indicated justifiable evidence on the robustness of duplex ultrasound parameters in measuring effects of early-stage PAD on blood flow in Black/African Zimbabwean asymptomatic diabetic patients. Duplex ultrasound is the cheapest imaging modality which is readily available in secondary care settings of district hospitals in Zimbabwe, thus the greater population of diabetic patients may be afforded earlier assessments for PAD more cheaply and affordably.

Findings for the second investigation of this thesis showed that amongst the robust duplex ultrasound parameters from the first investigation, peak systolic velocity and resistive index were capable of demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb arterial blood flow of diabetic patients with the exclusion of pulsatility index. The findings of the second investigation thus

provided justifiable evidence to utilise duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and resistive index when screening for early-stage PAD to augment the findings of the already recommended Ankle Brachial Index.

Findings for the third investigation of this thesis showed justifiable evidence on the robustness of duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure in demonstrating the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on the blood flow of the popliteal arteries of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls. The findings of the third investigation showed the clinically significant acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion as reduced blood pressure and improved blood flow in the popliteal arteries of these participants during the 2 ½ -3 ½ hours' time point as demonstrated by peak systolic velocity. In the third investigation of this thesis, the acute effects of beetroot juice were demonstrated during the 2 ½ - 3 ½ hours' time slot which coincided with the same time (less or equal to 3 hours) for the bioavailability of nitrite and nitric oxide from the nitrate of ingested beetroot juice which reflected as reduced blood pressure (Kenjale et al., 2011; Webb et al., 2008; Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Kapil et al., 2010), enhanced exercise performance (Vanhatalo et al., 2010; Webb et al., 2008; Kenjale et al., 2011), peaking plasma nitrite (Kenjale et al., 2011).

The Ankle Brachial Index test was performed in all the participants for the first and second investigations as a parallel test since prior evidence has shown Ankle Brachial Index being popularly recommended to screen and quantify asymptomatic PAD (Hirsh et al., 2005; Norgren et al. 2007; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2006; Rooke et al., 2011) while there were no prior studies done to show justifying evidence to recommend the utilisation of duplex ultrasound in assessing early-stage PAD in asymptomatic participants during the writing up of this thesis. Prior evidence in other populations has shown normal range levels of Ankle Brachial Index of greater or equal to 0.9 and less or equal to 1 while values less than 0.9 would indicate the presence of PAD and values greater than 1.3 would indicate incompressible arteries with median calcification in

diabetic patients, (Chen et al, 2015; Park et al, 2012; Jude, 2004). In this thesis, the mean Ankle Brachial Index for the participants in both groups was normal range 1.1 ( $\pm 0.1$ ) justifying that the diabetic patients in this thesis did not have symptomatic/late-stage PAD but early-stage /asymptomatic PAD instead.

### **7.3 Overall contribution to knowledge gap.**

Firstly, this thesis has contributed to the existing gap in knowledge that the duplex ultrasound parameters such peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index are robust measures with low measurement error in the assessment of lower limb arterial blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD (first investigation).

Secondly, this thesis contributed new knowledge that clinically significant effects of early-stage PAD on lower limb arterial blood flow of diabetic patients can be demonstrated by duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and resistive index (second investigation).

Thirdly this thesis contributed new knowledge that the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion on lower limb arterial blood flow of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD and non-diabetic controls were demonstrated as reduced peak systolic velocity and reduced systolic and diastolic blood pressure during the 2 ½ -3 ½ hours' time point post beetroot juice ingestion. Again, Peak systolic velocity demonstrated a clinically significant change in blood flow between groups 2 ½ -3 ½ hours post beetroot juice ingestion which could be interpreted as therapeutic (third investigation).



## **7.4 Overall thesis conclusions**

Based on the findings of the three studies of this thesis, the principal investigator made the following conclusions;

### **i) The first investigation**

The duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index are a robust measuring tool for lower limb arterial blood flow in Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients with early-stage (asymptomatic) PAD except for vessel diameter inner to inner.

### **ii) The second investigation**

The duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and resistive index are capable of demonstrating the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb arteries blood flow of Zimbabwean Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients with the exclusion of pulsatility index.

### **iii) The third investigation**

The duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity alongside systolic blood pressure and diastolic blood pressure demonstrated the acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion as improved blood flow and reduced blood pressure respectively during the 2 ½ and 3 ½ hours post beetroot juice ingestion in Zimbabwean Black/African diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls. Peak systolic velocity demonstrated clinical significant blood flow change between groups post beetroot juice ingestion, which is likely due to vasodilation.

## 7.5 Overall implications of thesis findings

From the findings of this thesis the principal investigator deduced the following implications;

- i) Duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and resistive index are robust parameters to measure and quantify the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb arterial blood flow of Zimbabwean Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients.
- ii) The acute effects of beetroot juice ingestion by Zimbabwean Black/African diabetes can be demonstrated by duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity alongside systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Peak systolic velocity can demonstrate short term therapeutic effects of beetroot juice ingestion by Zimbabwean Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients and non-diabetic controls.
- iii) This thesis findings have provided evidence which could be utilised to enhance earlier detection of the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb arterial blood flow of asymptomatic diabetic patients more cheaply and affordably in Zimbabwe.
- iv) The background on the management of diabetes mellitus in Zimbabwe has indicated that the main drawbacks to effectively manage it was the shortage of basic commodities which include essential medicines and glucostrips (Parirenyatwa and Gwinji, 2016-2020). The results presented in this thesis provide evidence of improved blood flow and reduced blood pressure at 2 ½ -3 ½ hours post beetroot juice ingestion by diabetic patients and the non-diabetic controls and the fact that the demonstrated blood flow change effects were clinically significant could mean beetroot juice could be offering some form of therapy to these patients. It is suggested that Zimbabwean diabetic patients or non-diabetic controls should include more nitrate-rich vegetables, such as beetroot, in their diets to improve blood flow and reduce blood

pressure. The benefit of reduced blood pressure and improvement in blood flow evidenced in the third investigation of this thesis are more favourable for 'normal' exercise-induced responses, which may further benefit the health of this population. However, additional post-doctoral research will be conducted to determine the chronic effects of beetroot juice ingestion and to determine if there will be additive benefits to increased physical activity.

- v) A modified diet of nitrate-rich vegetables and a lifestyle of exercise can provide the Zimbabwean diabetic population with the benefit of reducing the burden of non-affordability of essential medications for improved blood flow and high blood pressure. Prior studies have also indicated that a sustaining control of blood pressure is only achieved in about 50% of hypertensive cases (Culter et al., 2008; Egan et al., 2010). This means that dietary based interventions are recognised as important strategies for primary prevention of high blood pressure (Savica et al., 2010) to reduce cardiovascular disease risk for example in diabetic patients.

## **7.6 Overall thesis recommendations**

From the findings of this thesis, the principal investigator made the following recommendations;

- i) A more liberal duplex assessment of the lower limb blood flow in asymptomatic diabetic patients should be enhanced in Zimbabwean secondary healthcare settings to enable early diagnosis of PAD.
- ii) The findings of this thesis recommend a longitudinal study post-doctoral to determine the long term effects of beetroot juice ingestion on blood flow and blood pressure on multi-centre heterogeneous samples in Zimbabwe increase external validity for justifying these therapeutic effects to the Zimbabwean population.

## 7.7 Dissemination of thesis findings

The principal investigator will publish the results of this thesis in aggregate form, from which individuals will not be identifiable and there will be no personally identifying data. The principal investigator will present the first publication of this thesis as a PhD thesis in the University of Salford Doctoral school repository. Currently, this PhD thesis has three papers in the pipeline and the principal investigator plans to publish them as follows;

- i) First investigation findings contributed to the existing literature review gap about the robustness of ultrasound parameters in measuring blood flow in the lower limbs of diabetic patients with early-stage PAD (Eiberg et al., 2010; Rooke et al., 2011). Therefore, the findings of this first investigation justify the repeatability of ultrasound parameters including peak systolic velocity, pulsatility index and resistive index in the measurement of blood flow in the lower limbs of asymptomatic diabetic patients with early-stage PAD. The findings from this first investigation may sensitise practising Zimbabwean sonographers and radiographers to utilise duplex ultrasound parameters when assessing blood flow in the diabetic patients, thus they will be published in the Zimbabwe Journal of Sciences Technology (ZJST). ZJST is open access, online and peer-reviewed journal published by the National University of Science and Technology, Zimbabwe with a coverage of about 74% in Zimbabwe and Africa (<https://www.nust.ac.zw/ZJST/>).
- ii) The second investigation findings contributed to the existing literature review gap in the current practising guidelines (Rooke et al., 2011; Gerhard-Herman et al., 2016; Hirsh et al., 2005) where Ankle Brachial Index has been solely recommended for the quantification and screening of early-stage PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients. The findings of the second investigation of this thesis justify the ability of duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and resistive index in

quantifying the effects of early-stage PAD on the lower limb blood flow of Zimbabwean Black/African asymptomatic diabetic patients. Therefore the principal investigator plans to publish these findings in the Radiography journal. The Radiography journal is an open-access peer-reviewed medical journal published by Elsevier which covers diagnostic and therapeutic radiography and having a high impact factor of 0.74 (<https://www.journals.elsevier.com/radiography>). The radiography journal commands a wide readership in the Radiography community, in Europe, Africa and beyond. Therefore, the principal investigator chose this journal as a suitable channel to promote the dissemination of this knowledge to sonographers and radiographers practising ultrasound to augment the findings of Ankle Brachial Index with ultrasound parameters during the screening and quantification of PAD in asymptomatic diabetic patients.

- iii) The findings of the third investigation of this thesis justified improvement of blood flow and reduction of blood pressure after about 2 ½ hrs post-ingestion of beetroot juice by asymptomatic diabetic patients. This evidence was measured by duplex ultrasound peak systolic velocity and blood pressure where clinically significant changes were detected and this suggested some therapeutic effects of beetroot juice ingestion. These findings were generalised to the population of the diabetic Zimbabwean Black/Africans of which most of them reside in poor communities and rural areas. In this case, the principal investigator will use the local ZJST to disseminate this evidence to the intellectual Zimbabwean and African community. However, to reach out to the ordinary rural population, the principal investigator plans to book a health and fitness talk show slot with Radio Zimbabwe, which is a radio station that broadcasts widely in the multi-languages spoken in Zimbabwe including the popular languages of Shona and Ndebele ([www.radioZim.co.zw](http://www.radioZim.co.zw)). To reach

out to the wider urban and English speaking Zimbabwean community the principal investigator will book a health and fitness talk show with classic 263 radio station which broadcasts mainly in English to the mature audience of the urban population of Zimbabwe (<https://www.classic263.co.zw>).

## 7.8 Appendices

### Appendix A)

#### Data collection sheet for diabetics/non-diabetics participants for investigations 1 and 2

<b>Participant code</b>	e. g. DM01			
<b>Age</b>				
<b>Gender</b>				
<b>ABI value</b>				
<b>Body mass index</b>				
<b>HbA<sub>1c</sub></b>				
<b>EGFR</b>				
<b>Reactive hyperaemic test</b>	Normal <input type="checkbox"/> abnormal <input type="checkbox"/>			
	<b>Duplex ultrasound parameters</b>			
<b>Arterial level</b>	PSV	PI	RI	VDI
<b>PA</b>				
<b>ATA</b>				
<b>PTA</b>				
<b>DPA</b>				

## Appendix B

Data collection sheet for the third investigation.

Patient code			
Time Slots	SBP	DBP	PSV
Basal -1½ hours			
1½hrs - 2 ½ hours			
2 ½ hrs – 3 ½ hours			



## Appendix C

### E-mail Advert for recruiting Non-Diabetic participants from NUST

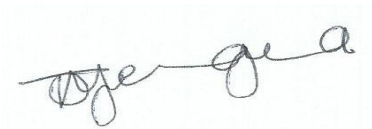
## Non- Diabetic volunteers for a research study

---

The study will be looking to test a developed ultrasound scan based tool for looking at the blood flow in the lower limbs of non-diabetic and diabetic participants. The study will go on to test the therapeutic effects of beetroot juice on the lower limb arteries of non-diabetic and diabetic participants. In order to help us test whether duplex ultrasound and beetroot juice could be useful in the future management of diabetic patients we need to run a series of tests on non-diabetic and diabetic participants.

You may participate in this study as long as you are non-diabetic, 18 years and above and if you happen to have any other medical condition which may be detected during the study, a protocol of further management of your condition with Physicians will be readily available.

Thank you very much for your time



Principal Investigator: Josephine Tityiwe (PhD Candidate, University of Salford, UK)  
*Lecturer-Radiography Department*

Please contact researcher [josephinetityiwe@yahoo.com](mailto:josephinetityiwe@yahoo.com), [josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw](mailto:josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw), [josywashetity@gmail.com](mailto:josywashetity@gmail.com) or on **002639281086 ext 2282** for further information.

## Appendix D



### Q diabetes risk calculator (2015)

College of Health Sciences, Frederick Road Campus, UK



National University of Science and Technology, Zimbabwe

**Project Title: Duplex ultrasound assessment of blood flow in the lower limb arteries of Zimbabwean diabetic patients with early-stage peripheral artery disease**

<b>Date:</b>	<b>Time:</b>		
<b>Gender</b> Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Ethnicity</b>	<b>Smoking status</b>	<b>Age</b>

i) **Do immediate family have diabetes?**

Yes  
☐

No  
☐

ii) **Do you have a high blood pressure requiring treatment?**

Yes  
☐

No  
☐

iii) **Have you had a heart attack, Angina, stroke or Transient Ischaemic attack?**

Yes  
☐

No  
☐

iv) **Are you on steroid tablets/medications?**

**Yes**

☐

**No**

☐

v)

**weight**

**Height**

**BMI**

**Calculated risk**

## Appendix E1 Quotation for Urea and creatinine blood tests

# EXCEL LABORATORIES

PATHOLOGIST: DR T.V MUBAKO MBCHB, MMED (UZ)

SUITE 400  
4TH FLOOR HALYET HOUSE  
9TH AVE & J. TONGOGARA ST.  
P.O BOX 117, BULAWAYO

CELL: +263 864471 71 71

TEL: +263 9 62633

+263 9 70443

EMAIL: accounts@excellabs.co.zw



DATE: 11 May, 2016

TO: Mrs J. Tityiwe

We are pleased to quote you as follows...

<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>QUANTITY</u>	<u>UNIT PRICE</u>	<u>TOTAL COST</u>
1. Urea and Creatinine	200	\$5.00	\$ 1,000.00
TOTAL			\$1,000.00

### Banking Details:

Account Name	EXCEL LABORATORIES
Account Number	01224332060016
Bank	CBZ BANK LTD.
Branch	8TH Avenue
Branch Code	012
Sort Code	6302

Prepared by

Ms S. Chigiji  
Administartor

*"Keeping You Healthy"*

## Appendix E2 Quotation for Glycated haemoglobin levels

# EXCEL LABORATORIES

PATHOLOGIST: DR T.V MUBAKO MBCHB, MMED (UZ)

SUITE 400  
4TH FLOOR HALYET HOUSE  
9TH AVE & J. TONGOGARA ST.  
P.O BOX 117, BULAWAYO

CELL: +263 864471 71 71

TEL: +263 9 62633

+263 9 70443

EMAIL: accounts@excellabs.co.zw



DATE: 14 July, 2016

TO: Mrs J. Tityiwe

We are pleased to quote you as follows...

DESCRIPTION	QUANTITY	UNIT PRICE	TOTAL COST
1. HBA1C (Glycosylated Haemoglobin)	200	\$3.00	\$ 600.00
TOTAL			\$ 600.00

### Banking Details:

Account Name	EXCEL LABORATORIES
Account Number	01224332060016
Bank	CBZ BANK LTD.
Branch	8TH Avenue
Branch Code	012
Sort Code	6302

Prepared by

Mr M. Willard  
Lab Administrator

EXCEL LABORATORIES  
SUITE 400 HALYET HSE  
9TH/J TONGOGARA BYO  
TEL: 09-70443/62633

*"Keeping You Healthy"*



## Appendix E3 Urea and creatinine preliminary results

### EXCEL LABORATORIES

PATHOLOGIST: DR T.V MUBAKO MBChB, MMED (J2)

SUITE 400  
4TH FLOOR HALVET HOUSE  
9TH AVE & J. TONGOGARA ST.  
P.O BOX 117, BULAWAYO

CELL: +263 864 471 71 71

TEL: +263 9 626 33

+263 9 704 43

EMAIL: lab@excellabs.co.zw



Patient's Name:	DM141	Medical Aid:	CASH / Private
Sex:	Female	Date Collected:	13/09/2016 00:00:00.0
D.O.B:	05/08/1951	Date Received:	13/09/2016 00:00:00.0
Lab Ref #:	482/16	Date Reported:	13/09/2016
Requesting Dr:			
Tests Requested:	Fasting blood sugar, Glycosylated Haemoglobin(HbA1C), Urea and Electrolytes		

#### Blood

##### Test Panel: Fasting blood sugar

Test	Result	Flags	Ref. Interval	Units
Fasting blood sugar	12.96	H	3.3 - 6.3	mmol/L

-- end of Fasting blood sugar Report --

#### Blood

##### Test Panel: Urea and Electrolytes

Test	Result	Flags	Ref. Interval	Units
Urea	4.54		2.5 - 7.2	mmol/L
Creatinine (CR-S)	53.6		48 - 131	umol/L
eGFR	125		> 90	ml/min/1.73m <sup>2</sup>

Stages of chronic kidney disease according to GFR:

Stage	Description	GFR (ml/min/1.73m <sup>2</sup> )
1	Normal	>90
2	Mild Renal Impairment	60-89
3	Moderate Renal Impairment	30-59
4	Renal Failure	1-15

GFR is affected by pregnancy, obesity, extreme ages and acute reduction in muscle mass.

-- end of Urea and Electrolytes Report --

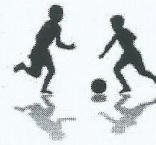
## Appendix E4 Glycated haemoglobin preliminary results.

### EXCEL LABORATORIES

PATHOLOGIST: DR T.V MUBAKO MBCHB, MMed (UZ)

SUITE 400  
4TH FLOOR HALYET HOUSE  
9TH AVE & J. TONGOGARA ST.  
P.O BOX 117, BULAWAYO

CELL: +263 864471 71 71  
TEL: +263 9 62633  
+263 9 70443  
EMAIL: lab@excelabs.co.zw



Patient's Name: **DM141** Medical Aid: CASH / Private  
Sex: Female Date Collected: 13/09/2016 00:00:00.0  
D.O.B: 05/08/1951 Date Received: 13/09/2016 00:00:00.0  
Lab Ref #: 482/16 Date Reported: 13/09/2016  
Requesting Dr:  
Tests: **Fasting blood sugar, Glycosylated Haemoglobin(HbA1C), Urea and**  
Requested: **Electrolytes**

#### Blood

##### Test Panel: Glycosylated Haemoglobin(HbA1C)

Test	Result	Flags	Ref. Interval	Units
Glycosylated Hb	8.9	H	4 - 6.4	%
Estimated average glucose	11.53	H	3.3 - 7.8	mmol/l

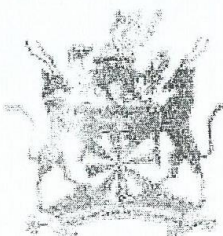
-- end of Glycosylated Haemoglobin(HbA1C) Report --

Authorized by: Mr B Mandimika

EXCEL LABORATORIES  
SUITE 400 HALYET HSE  
9TH/J TONGOGARA BYO  
TEL: 09-70443/62633



## Appendix E5 Health professions registration for Excel Laboratory



No 1706

**HEALTH PROFESSIONS AUTHORITY  
ZIMBABWE**

HEALTH PROFESSIONS ACT; CHAPTER 27:19

**Registration Of Health Institutions**

CURRENT REG NO. **LA 5960**

This is to Certify that

**EXCEL LABORATORY**

Situating at  
**SUITE 400, 4<sup>TH</sup> FLOOR HAYLET HOUSE, CNR J.TONGOGARA/ 9<sup>TH</sup> AVENUE,  
BULAWAYO**

Is Registered on the Register of Health Institutions kept by the Health Professions  
Authority

Conditions: .....

Name of Practitioner: **DR TAKAWIRA V. MUBAKO, PATHOLOGIST**

31/12/2016

This Certificate Expires On .....

DATE **04/03/2016** SECRETARY-GENERAL .....

Failure to display the certificate in a conspicuous position attracts a fine, Section 106 (i) of the Health Professions Act



## Appendix F

### Collated demographic data for the first investigation

PATIENT	EGFR	HbA <sub>1c</sub>	BMI	AGE	GENDER	ABI
DM86	93	6.2	35	43	FEMALE	1.3
DM205	103	6.3	33.7	70	FEMALE	1.2
DM99	176	5	1.1	55	FEMALE	1.1
DM69	96	5.6	31	70	MALE	1.3
DM70	110	5.6	35	53	FEMALE	0.9
DM82	116	6.8	28	41	MALE	1.2
DM53	91	5.7	22	36	MALE	1.1
DM54	90	6.9	31	51	FEMALE	1.2
DM24	107	4.9	24	26	FEMALE	1
DM23	125	5.6	26	50	FEMALE	1

#### Key:

**EGFR**-Estimated glomerular filtration rate

**HbA<sub>1c</sub>**-Glycated Haemoglobin Levels

**BMI**-Body Mass Index

**ABI**-Ankle Brachial Index

**Appendix G**  
**The UK Diabetes Risk Score (Diabetes UK, 2012)**  
**University Hospital of Leicester, NHS Trust**

<p><b>1) How old are you?</b></p> <p>a) 49 or younger.....[0]</p> <p>b) 50-59.....[5]</p> <p>c) 60-69.....[9]</p> <p>d) 70 or older.....[13]</p>	<p><b>2) Are you female or male?</b></p> <p>a) Female.....[0]</p> <p>b) Male.....[1]</p>
<p><b>3) What is your ethnic group?</b></p> <p>a) Only white European.....[0]</p> <p>b) Other ethnic groups.....[6]</p>	<p><b>4) Do you have a father, mother, brother, sister and/ own child with type II diabetes?</b></p> <p>a) Yes.....[5]</p> <p>b) No.....[0]</p>
<p><b>5) Measure the person's waist circumference and choose range:</b></p> <p>a) Less than 90 cm.....[0]</p> <p>b) 90-99,9cm.....[4]</p> <p>c) 100-109,9cm.....[6]</p> <p>d) 110cm or above.....[9]</p>	<p><b>6) Calculate the person's Body Mass Index(BMI) and choose the range:</b></p> <p>a) Less than 25.....[0]</p> <p>b) 25-29, 9..... [3]</p> <p>c) 30-34, 9..... [5]</p> <p>d) 35 or above.....[8]</p>
<p><b>7) Have you been given medicine for high blood pressure or told that you have high blood pressure, by your doctor?</b></p> <p>a) Yes.....[5]</p> <p>b) No.....[0]</p>	
<p><b>Your score is.....points</b></p>	

<b>Risk level</b>	<b>Chances of having Type 2 Diabetes now</b>	<b>Chance of high blood glucose now, thus the risk of type 2 in 10 years</b>	<b>What you need to do</b>
0-6 points(Low risk)	1 in 200	1 in 20	Keep up good work; make lifestyle adjustment to reduce further risk.
7-15 points(increased risk)	1 in 50	1 in 10	Make life style changes
16-24 points(moderate risk)	1 in 33	1 in 7	See your GP to discuss your risk and how to reduce it.
25 or more points(High risk)	1 in 14	1 in 3	See your GP as soon as possible for a blood test.

## Appendix Hi)

### Medical Research Council Zimbabwe Consent form (stage1 and 2)

#### English version

**Title:** Comparison of key ultrasound variables between the diabetic and non-Diabetic lower limb arteries.

**Principal Investigator:** Josephine S Tityiwe, *[PhD candidate.]*

**Phone number(s):** +263778495185

#### WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT THIS RESEARCH STUDY:

You are being invited to take part in a research study to help us to enhance the assessment of the diseased diabetic compared with the healthy Non-Diabetic lower limb blood supply. Before you decide, it is important for you to understand why the research is being done and what it will involve. This document gives you important information about the purpose, risks, and benefits of participating in the study. Please take time to read the following information carefully. If you have any questions, then feel free to contact the researcher whose details are given at the end of the document. **Take your time at least 24 hours to decide whether or not you wish to take part.**

#### Background

Zimbabwe is experiencing a chronic health problem of type II diabetes and its complications, one of which includes the disease of the lower limbs blood supply. This disease of the lower limbs' blood supply if untreated results in the gradual formation of plaque in the walls of the blood vessels leading to gradual stenosis limiting blood supply to the lower limbs tissue starting with the feet. Early detection of lower limb blood supply disease enables treatment to be initiated early and so delay early-stage diabetic patients from sliding into late-stage symptoms of severe lack of oxygen to the lower limb tissues, and limb loss when

the lower leg tissue starts rotting due to lack of oxygen as the blood supply will be blocked. Amputation of the affected limb is then done at the end to avoid the uncontrolled spread of infection.

Currently, Zimbabwe does not have an affordable and robust testing method for investigating this disease of the lower limbs blood supply in diabetic patients in its early stages in secondary care rural and urban district hospitals besides clinical testing.

Diabetic patients experiencing late-stage symptoms for the arterial disease are referred to as tertiary and quaternary care hospitals where ultrasound is requested to rule out blood supply disease. Though limited by affordability Computed Tomography and Magnetic Resonance imaging methods are requested to verify ultrasound results suggestive of surgical intervention. Ultrasound has been shown by prior evidence as a very reliable and affordable testing method to detect lower limb blood supply disease and currently ultrasound is also an imaging modality which is cheap and readily available in Zimbabwe's rural and urban district hospitals.

The purpose of this study is to justify whether a developed protocol of ultrasound parameters could be reliably able to detect early changes of arterial disease in Zimbabwean Diabetic patients compared to Non-Diabetic participants through blood flow assessment.

## **WHAT WILL HAPPEN TO ME IF I PARTICIPATE IN THIS STUDY?**

### **How long will it take?**

If you agree to take part in the study, you will have your lower legs examined by a physician and if your legs are not categorised as in early-stage according to the details in the inclusion criteria, then you will no longer be eligible to continue with the study but rather to continue with your care with physicians. The following steps will be done on you by the physician;

- i) A cuff of a manual blood pressure machine shall be strapped on your lower segment thigh and tightened for about 5 minutes. After this small lapse period, the cuff shall be released and your right ankle's blood pressure will be measured after 5 seconds and recorded.
- ii) After these tests, you shall be given an information sheet with detailed instructions on whether you will continue with the study or not.
- iii) Once this is done you will be referred to research assistants who will be waiting outside the physicians' rooms and you will be given dietary instructions to prepare for the booking with the laboratory for blood tests on a day flexible to you during the week and you will receive a phone call from the research assistants to come and collect your blood results the following day after undertaking blood tests

**You will be required to do the following instructions before the blood tests;**

- i) You will be prescribed a vegetable diet at least two days prior and to fast at least 12 hrs before undertaking the blood test, and then you will be given a snack of 100% fruit juice, low sugar biscuits and allowed to take your prescribed medications soon after having the refreshments. Alcohol shall also not be taken during the 12 hrs fasting time before undertaking of the blood tests.
- ii) The blood tests undertaken will be assessed for levels of glucose, and you will be eligible to continue in the study if your blood results show normal range glucose levels.
- iii) Your blood samples will also be assessed for renal function and you will be eligible to continue in the study if your renal function is within the normal range.
- iv) Time in the laboratory may take about 20 minutes and after this, you will be instructed to go to the ultrasound department one floor

downstairs from the laboratory where you will be given some refreshments and rest under observation for about 10 minutes in the department.

- v) **The total time for the blood tests appointment will be about 40 minutes.**

After receiving your blood results and are still eligible you will undertake the following tests in the ultrasound department close to the laboratory as follows;

- iv) Your medical history and age will be recorded and you will be assigned your code number which shall be used to identify you during the study.
- v) Your body weight will be measured with a digital scale and recorded.
- vi) Your waist will be measured with a tape measure and recorded as well.
- vii) You will be allowed supine rest of about 10 minutes and then after this, you will then undertake an ultrasound scan for assessing the blood supply of your worst lower leg.

**The total time for each visit will be about 1 hour 30 minutes.**

The first visit will involve:

- Time in the laboratory (20 minutes)
- Medical history (10 minutes)
- Weight and waist measurements (10 minutes)
- Supine rest (10 minutes)
- Ultrasound scanning of the right lower leg (20 minutes)
- Refreshments (20 minutes)

## **FURTHER DETAILS ON THE SPECIFIC TESTS**

A report of any incidental findings will be given to you and you will be referred to the Physicians at the diabetic clinic for further management.

## **RISKS AND POTENTIAL BENEFITS OF THE STUDY**

This is a very simple and straight forward study with no expected obvious risks. All the measurements described above will be operated by experienced sonographers and physicians and involves well designed technical equipment that has been used for many years in the assessment of the lower legs blood supply in vascular laboratories and day to day patient care in hospitals around the world.

The ultrasound gel to be used is hypo-allergic and easily washable when in contact with skin or clothes. You will be given paper towels to wipe your legs after the scan. No dangerous rays will be used and the ultrasound is not a dangerous form of energy which will be used within approved international safety standards.

**You have the right to refuse to take part, or agree to take part now and change your mind later. Whatever you decide, it will not affect your regular care.**

## **WHAT BENEFITS ARE INVOLVED IN PARTICIPATING IN THE STUDY?**

Despite this study posing minimal risk to the participating people since ultrasound is not a dangerous form of energy, a team of three physicians will be available on the cover for monitoring your health and wellbeing.

A protocol for unexpected findings from your leg scans will be in place so that you will be referred to a physician appropriately and a protocol with the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe will be followed in case of an adverse event. Each participant will benefit a full ultrasound report detailing the condition of their lower limbs blood supply which they may also use for further management with physicians.



## WHAT IF SOMETHING GOES WRONG?

The complaint channel will involve filling in of the serious adverse event form from the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe, an organisation which monitors research work done with humans and animals in Zimbabwe. Despite this being a minimal risk study, three physicians will be available for effective monitoring of the health and wellness of participants.

## WHAT IF I WANT TO LEAVE THE STUDY EARLY?

***You can withdraw from this study at any time without loss of any time and loss of any non- study-related benefits to which you would have been entitled before participating in the study.*** If you want to withdraw you must do so by notifying the study researcher or the supervisor with the contact information below. Your decision not to participate will be without penalty and will not affect your future relations with Mpilo hospital, its personnel and associated hospitals.

## CONFIDENTIALITY OF SUBJECT RECORDS

All information which is collected about participants during the research will be kept strictly confidential and shall only be used for research purposes even if you withdraw before the study is finished. Any information about you which leaves Mpilo hospital will have your name and address and any other identifying features removed so that you cannot be recognised from it. You may indicate your willingness to participate in this study by signing this document. Any information that is obtained in connection with this study that can be identified with participants will remain confidential and will be disclosed only with their permission.

## **WHAT WILL HAPPEN TO THE RESULTS OF THE RESEARCH STUDY?**

A summary of the research findings will be available to everyone who participates in the experiments. Significant findings may be published in radiology and radiography journals.

## **RISKS TO PREGNANT WOMEN**

Although this research does not represent a significant risk to participants, pregnant women or vulnerable adults will not be allowed to participate to avoid any unpredicted effects of beetroot juice to the unborn child and also to avoid overloading the kidneys of very old fragile old people which will be already ageing in work package two of the study.

## **BENEFITS AND/OR COMPENSATION**

We cannot and do not guarantee or promise that you will receive any benefits from this study, but you will be assisted with transport reimbursements and some refreshments while all the care you shall receive during the study will be for free. Any unexpected scan findings in the participating people will be referred for further management with the physicians. After the scan for this study, each participant will be given a scan report which will aid their further management with Physicians and other health professionals.

## **ADDITIONAL COSTS**

There are no additional costs to be borne by the participants in this study.

## **IN THE EVENT OF INJURY**

In the event of injury resulting from your participation in this study, treatment shall be offered by the participating sonographers and physicians.

In the event of injury, contact the Researcher, Josephine Tityiwe on +263778495185 and arrangements for your care will be promptly done. This number shall be available 24hrs a day at your service.

## CONTACT INFORMATION

If you require more information about the study, want to participate, or are already participating, having any complains or wanting to withdraw, please contact:

<p><b>Josephine S Tityiwe (Researcher) OR</b>  <a href="mailto:josephinetityiwe@yahoo.com">josephinetityiwe@yahoo.com</a>  National University of Science and  Technology  Applied Physics Department  Corner Cecil/Gwanda Road  P.O. Box AC 939, Ascot  Bulawayo, Zimbabwe  Phone: +2639282842 ext. 2282</p>	<p><b>Dr Gillian Crofts(PhD Supervisor)</b>  <a href="mailto:g.crofts@salford.ac.uk">g.crofts@salford.ac.uk</a>  Associate Head International  School of Health Sciences  A138, Allerton  University of Salford  Tel: +44(0)61 295 7021</p>
<p><b>Anish Kurien (Research Centres Manager) OR</b>  E-mail:  <a href="mailto:a.kurien@salford.ac.uk">a.kurien@salford.ac.uk</a>  Research and Enterprise Team  Joule House G08  University of Salford  P. O. Box AC 939  Tel:+44(0)6155276  Bulawayo, Zimbabwe</p>	<p><b>Dr G Azangwe (PhD Advisor)</b>  <a href="mailto:godfrey.azangwe@gmail.com">godfrey.azangwe@gmail.com</a>  Senior Lecturer  Applied Physics department  National University  Science and Technology  Tel:+2639281086 ext. 2282</p>

## **Record of information provided**

You will receive a copy of the information sheet and a signed consent form to keep for your records. Thank you very much for taking the time to read this document. We appreciate your interest and hope to welcome you in our study.

## **SIGNATURE PAGE**

### **PROJECT TITLE**

**Comparison of key ultrasound variables between the diabetic and non-Diabetic lower limb arteries.**

### **OFFER TO ANSWER QUESTIONS**

Before you sign this form, please ask any questions on any aspect of this study that is unclear to you. You may take as much time as necessary to think it over.

### **AUTHORISATION**

You are deciding whether or not to participate in this study. Your signature indicates that you have read and understood the information provided above, have had all your questions answered, and have decided to participate.

Name of research participant (please print.....) Date.....

Signature of a participant or legally authorised representative.....Time.....

Relationship to the Participant.....

[The above two lines should appear on forms signed by legal representatives of the participant, for example, the parents of a minor]

Name of staff obtaining consent .....Signature.....Date.....

Name of Witness (if required).....Signature.....Date.....

**YOU WILL BE OFFERED A COPY OF THIS CONSENT FORM TO KEEP.**

If you have any questions concerning this study or consent form beyond those answered by the investigator, including questions about the research, your rights as a research participant or research-related injuries; or if you feel that you have been treated unfairly and would like to talk to someone other than a member of the research team, please feel free to contact the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe (MRCZ) on telephone (04)791792 or (04) 791193 and cell phone lines 0772 433 166 or 0779 439 564. The MRCZ Offices are located at the National Institute of Health Research premises at Corner Josiah Tongogara and Mazowe Avenue in Harare.

**Appendix H ii)**  
**Medical Research Council Zimbabwe Consent form**  
**Third investigation English version**

**Title: Effects of ingested beetroot juice on blood flow in lower limb arteries of diabetic patients with early-stage peripheral artery disease and non-diabetic controls.**

**Principal Investigator:** Josephine S Tityiwe, *[PhD candidate.]*

**Phone number(s):** +263778495185

**WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT THIS RESEARCH STUDY:**

You are being invited to take part in a research study to help us to enhance the assessment of the diseased diabetic compared with the healthy non-diabetic lower limb blood supply. Before you decide, it is important for you to understand why the research is being done and what it will involve. This document gives you important information about the purpose, risks, and benefits of participating in the study. Please take time to read the following information carefully. If you have any questions, then feel free to contact the researcher whose details are given at the end of the document. **Take your time at least 24 hours to decide whether or not you wish to take part.**

**Background**

Zimbabwe is experiencing a chronic health problem of type II diabetes and its complications, one of which includes the disease of the lower limbs blood supply. This disease of the lower limbs' blood supply if untreated results in the gradual formation of plaque the walls of the blood vessels leading to gradual stenosis limiting blood supply to the lower limbs tissue starting with the feet. Early detection of lower limb blood supply disease enables treatment to be initiated early and so delay early-stage diabetic patients from sliding into late-stage

symptoms of critical limb ischaemia, gangrene and limb loss when the lower leg tissue starts rotting due to lack of oxygen as the blood supply will be blocked.

Prior evidence has proven beetroot juice as a popular vasodilator and has been used successfully in the treatment and reduction of blood pressure, in subjects with cardiovascular disease and type II diabetes as well, therefore it is feasible that beetroot juice could be given to early-stage Diabetics to maintain blood flow and reduce the risk of the development of vascular problems in the lower limbs.

In work package two of this study, the established reliable ultrasound parameters from work package one will be utilised to detect for any changes in blood flow in the lower limb blood vessels of participants from work package one after drinking beetroot juice. Work package two will only start after completion of work package one and the participants will be given a small break for one week. Evidence from both work package one and 2 will justify whether ultrasound and beetroot juice could be used in the formation of a new pathway for managing lower limb blood supply disease in Zimbabwean diabetic patients.

## **WHAT WILL HAPPEN TO ME IF I PARTICIPATE IN THIS STUDY?**

### **How long will it take?**

In this second stage of the study, if you agree to continue, you will be required to fast at least 12 hrs from overnight and to come for the appointment at the ultrasound centre by 8 am.

You shall be required not to drink alcohol for at least 48 hours before the examination and you shall not take your prescribed medications during the fasting period as well but bring them with you for your appointment.

You shall be asked to lie down on the ultrasound couch for about 10 minutes and your blood pressure will be measured with an automated blood pressure machine and noted down.

After this procedure, you will be allowed to take a seat in the waiting area and then you will be given 60ml of beetroot juice which will be diluted in 500ml of water to drink. Soon after drinking beetroot, you will be allowed to take your medication for diabetes, Metformin and you shall be allowed to relax for at least 1 hr 20 minutes after drinking it to allow digestion of the beetroot juice in the stomach.

You will not take your hypertension medication at this stage yet.

After this 1 hr 10 minutes, you shall be given 10 minutes to change into a comfortable clean gown, to remove your shoes and socks and to lie on the ultrasound couch.

After lying down for minutes the lower limb blood supply of your right leg which was scanned prior in work package one will be scanned at 1 hr 30 minutes, 2 hrs 30 minutes and finally at 3 hrs 30 minutes to track for any changes in blood flow. Concurrently during each of these time intervals, your upper arm blood pressure will also be measured and recorded well.

The ultrasound scanning procedure will end at 3 hrs 30 minutes and then you will be allowed to drink a 100% low nitrate juice and low sugar biscuit and to take your blood pressure medication only if you are told that your blood pressure is still above the normal levels. Other prescribed medications may be taken during this time as well and you will relax in the ultrasound department for about 20 minutes before being allowed to go home.

Time to be spent for this appointment will be as follows;

- i) Lying on the couch and resting for first BP measurement (10minutes).
- ii) Drinking diluted beetroot juice and relaxing (1hr 10 minutes).
- iii) Changing into a gown and lying on the couch (20 minutes).
- iv) Serial scanning of the right lower limb blood supply (1 ½hrs, 2 ½ hrs and finally 3 ½ hrs).



- v) Refreshments and taking prescribed medications (20 minutes).
- vi) Total time in the ultrasound department (3 hrs 50 minutes).

## **FURTHER DETAILS ON THE SPECIFIC TESTS**

A report of any incidental findings will be given to you and you will be referred to the Physicians at the diabetic clinic for further management.

## **RISKS AND POTENTIAL BENEFITS OF THE STUDY**

This is a very simple and straight forward study with no expected obvious risks. All the measurements described above will be operated by experienced sonographers and physicians and involves well designed technical equipment that has been used for many years in the assessment of the lower legs blood supply in vascular laboratories and day to day patient care in hospitals around the world.

The ultrasound gel to be used is hypo-allergic and easily washable when in contact with skin or clothes. You will be given paper towels to wipe your legs after the scan. No dangerous rays will be used and the ultrasound is not a dangerous form of energy which will be used within approved international safety standards.

Beetroot juice has been well researched and concentrations of about 5 mmol to 8 mmol of natural inorganic nitrate in beetroot juice have been used in previous beetroot juice studies without any known adverse effects in other countries.

In this investigation, the molar concentration of dietary nitrate in the beetroot juice which you will be given is 7.38 mmol similar to concentrations used before in previous oral administration beetroot juice research studies.

The previously noted side effects of oral beetroot juice intake included beeturia, red stools, reduction of blood pressure and mild gastrointestinal discomfort, however, a team of three physicians will be available on the cover for the monitoring of any allergic reactions to beetroot juice intake.

In case of any allergic reactions taking place in any of you, a correct pathway of management with the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe will be followed with the filling in of adverse reaction forms and a physician will be on cover to manage these allergic reactions.

A protocol for incidental findings will also be in place so that you will be referred to the physicians for further management accordingly.

**You have the right to refuse to take part, or agree to take part now and change your mind later. Whatever you decide, it will not affect your regular care.**

## **WHAT BENEFITS ARE INVOLVED IN PARTICIPATING IN THE STUDY?**

Despite this study posing minimal risk to the participating people since ultrasound is not a dangerous form of energy, a team of three physicians will be available on the cover for monitoring your health and wellbeing.

A protocol for unexpected findings from your leg scans will be in place so that you will be referred to a physician appropriately and a protocol with the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe will be followed in case of an adverse event. Each participant will benefit a full ultrasound report detailing the condition of their lower limbs blood supply which they may also use for further management with physicians.

There is a potential therapeutic benefit from ingesting beetroot juice to the lower limb blood supply besides reduction in blood pressure as established by prior evidence.

## **WHAT IF SOMETHING GOES WRONG?**

The complaint channel will involve filling in of the serious adverse event form from the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe, an organisation which monitors research work done with humans and animals in Zimbabwe. Despite this being a minimal risk study, three physicians will be available for effective monitoring of the health and wellness of participants.

### **IF I WANT TO LEAVE THE STUDY EARLY?**

***You can withdraw from this study at any time without loss of any time and loss of any non- study-related benefits to which you would have been entitled before participating in the study.*** If you want to withdraw you must do so by notifying the study researcher or the supervisor with the contact information below. Your decision not to participate will be without penalty and will not affect your future relations with Mpilo hospital, its personnel and associated hospitals.

### **CONFIDENTIALITY OF SUBJECT RECORDS**

All information which is collected about participants during the research will be kept strictly confidential and shall only be used for research purposes even if you withdraw before the study is finished. Any information about you which leaves Mpilo hospital will have your name and address and any other identifying features removed so that you cannot be recognised from it. You may indicate your willingness to participate in this study by signing this document. Any information that is obtained in connection with this study that can be identified with participants will remain confidential and will be disclosed only with their permission.

### **WHAT WILL HAPPEN TO THE RESULTS OF THE RESEARCH STUDY?**

A summary of the research findings will be available to everyone who participates in the experiments. Significant findings may be published in radiology and radiography journals.

### **RISKS TO PREGNANT WOMEN**

Although this research does not represent a significant risk to participants, pregnant women or vulnerable adults will not be allowed to participate to avoid any unpredicted effects of beetroot juice to the unborn child and also to avoid overloading the kidneys of very old fragile old people which will be already ageing.

### **BENEFITS AND/OR COMPENSATION**

We cannot and do not guarantee or promise that you will receive any benefits from this study, but you will be assisted with transport reimbursements and some refreshments while all the care you shall receive during the study will be for free. Any unexpected scan findings in the participating people will be referred for further management with the physicians. After the scan for this study, each participant will be given a scan report which will aid their further management with Physicians and other health professionals.

### **ADDITIONAL COSTS**

There are no additional costs to be borne by the participants in this study.

### **IN THE EVENT OF INJURY**

In the event of injury resulting from your participation in this study, treatment shall be offered by the participating sonographers and physicians.

In the event of injury, contact the Researcher, Josephine Tityiwe on +263778495185 and arrangements for your care will be promptly done. This number shall be available 24hrs a day at your service.

## CONTACT INFORMATION

If you require more information about the study, want to participate, or are already participating, having any complains or wanting to withdraw, please contact:

<p><b>Josephine S Tityiwe (Principal Investigator)</b>  <a href="mailto:josephinetityiwe@yahoo.com">josephinetityiwe@yahoo.com</a>  National University of Science and Technology  Applied Physics Department  Corner Cecil/Gwanda Road  P.O. Box AC 939, Ascot  Bulawayo, Zimbabwe  Phone: +2639282842 ext. 2282</p>	<p><b>Dr Gillian Crofts(PhD Supervisor)</b>  <a href="mailto:g.crofts@salford.ac.uk">g.crofts@salford.ac.uk</a>  Associate Head International  School of Health Sciences  A138, Allerton  University of Salford  Tel: +44(0)61 295 7021</p>
<p><b>Anish Kurien (Research Centres Manager) OR</b>  E-mail:  <a href="mailto:a.kurien@salford.ac.uk">a.kurien@salford.ac.uk</a>  Research and Enterprise Team  Joule House G08  University of Salford  P. O. Box AC 939  Tel:+44(0)6155276  Bulawayo, Zimbabwe</p>	<p><b>Dr G Azangwe (PhD Advisor)</b>  <a href="mailto:godfrey.azangwe@gmail.com">godfrey.azangwe@gmail.com</a>  Senior Lecturer  Applied Physics department  National University  Science and Technology  Tel:+2639281086 ext. 2282</p>

## Record of information provided

You will receive a copy of the information sheet and a signed consent form to keep for your records. Thank you very much for taking the time to read this document. We appreciate your interest and hope to welcome you in our study.

## **SIGNATURE PAGE**

### **PROJECT TITLE**

**Effects of beetroot juice ingestion lower limb arterial blood flow of diabetic patients with early-stage peripheral artery disease and non-diabetic controls.**

### **OFFER TO ANSWER QUESTIONS**

Before you sign this form, please ask any questions on any aspect of this study that is unclear to you. You may take as much time as necessary to think it over.

### **AUTHORISATION**

You are deciding whether or not to participate in this study. Your signature indicates that you have read and understood the information provided above, have had all your questions answered, and have decided to participate.

**Name of research Participant (please print..... Date.....**

**Signature of a participant or legally authorised representative.....Time...**

**Relationship to the Participant.....**

[The above two lines should appear on forms signed by legal representatives of the participant, for example, the parents of a minor.]

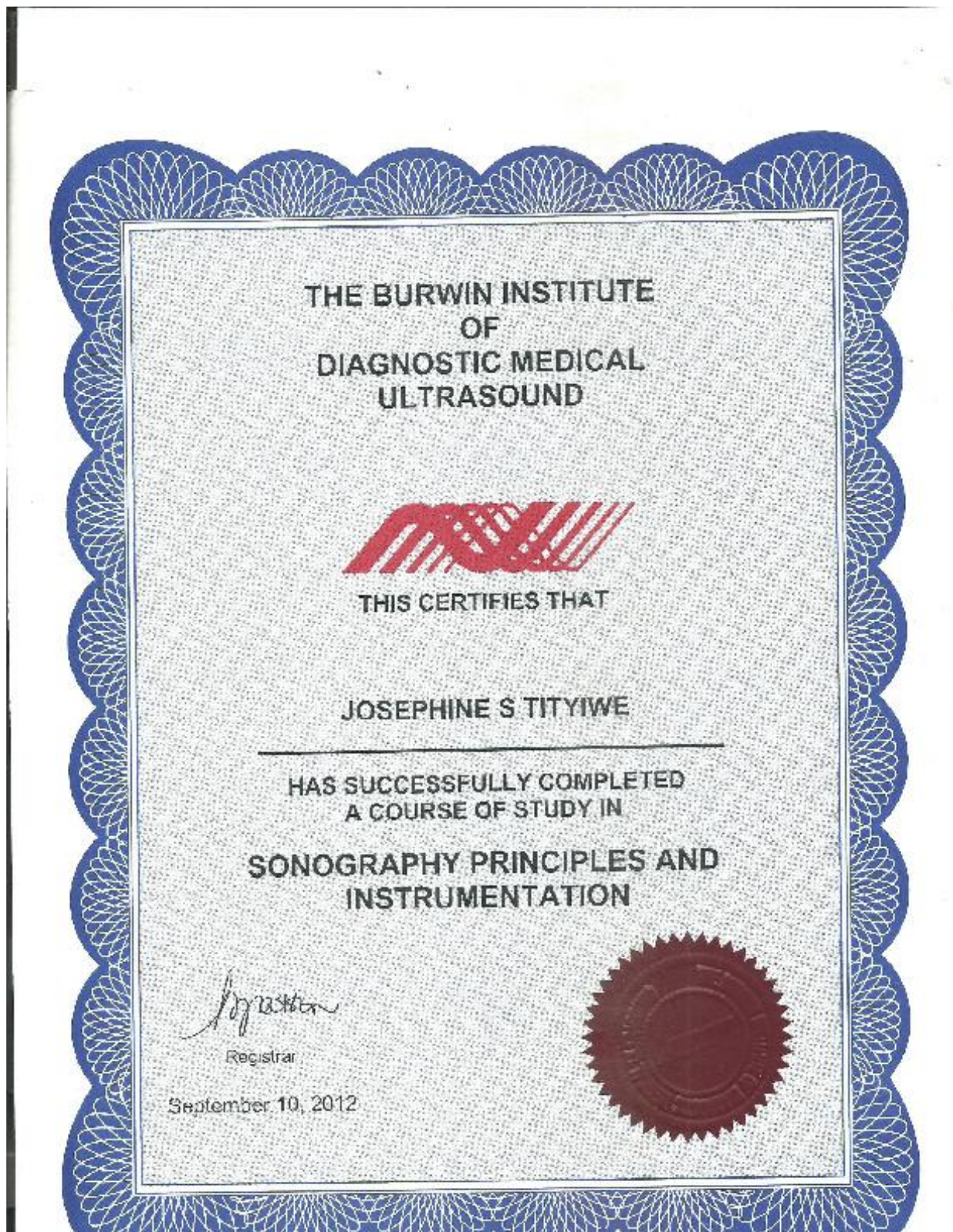
**Name of Staff obtaining consent.....Signature.....Date.....**

**Name of Witness (if required.....) Signature.....Date.....**

**YOU WILL BE OFFERED A COPY OF THIS CONSENT FORM TO KEEP.**

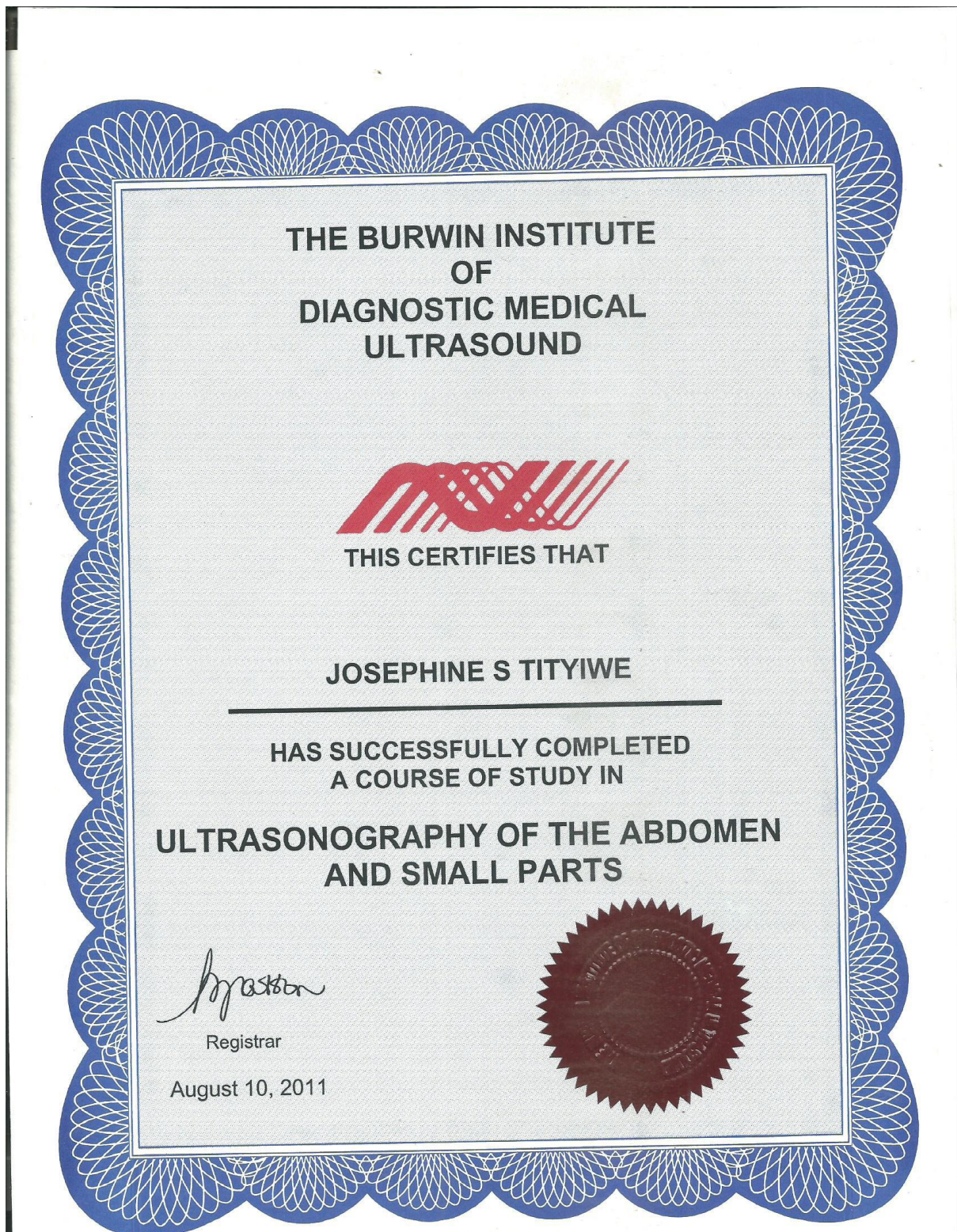
If you have any questions concerning this study or consent form beyond those answered by the investigator, including questions about the research, your rights as a research participant or research-related injuries; or if you feel that you have been treated unfairly and would like to talk to someone other than a member of the research team, please feel free to contact the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe (MRCZ) on telephone (04)791792 or (04) 791193 and cell phone lines 0772 433 166 or 0779 439 564. The MRCZ Offices are located at the National Institute of Health Research premises at Corner Josiah Tongogara and Mazowe Avenue in Harare.

**Appendix I Sonography principles and instrumentation qualification**





**Appendix J The abdomen and Small parts ultrasound qualification.**





**Appendix K Obstetrics and Gynaecology ultrasound qualification**



## Appendix L Diagnostic Radiography Registration certificate

**AHPC**

---

**ALLIED HEALTH PRACTITIONERS COUNCIL**

---

Parirenyatwa Hospital Grounds  
1<sup>st</sup> Floor, Old Central Building  
Mazowe Street P.O. Box A14  
Avondale, Harare  
Phone: +263 4 702143, Cell: +263 771 056 413  
alliedhealth01@gmail.com

Health Professions Act (Chapter 27:19)

**REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE**


**This is to certify that**


Josephine Sekai Tityiwe

**is registered on the register of  
Diagnostic Radiographers  
kept by the Allied Health Practitioners Council of  
Zimbabwe  
in accordance with the provisions of the  
Health Professions Act (Chapter 27:19)**

Registration Number: 349118

Date: 09/03/2000

Registrar   
Harare Zimbabwe



## Appendix M

### Mpilo hospital permission letter.

Reference:

Telephone: 09-212011

Fax: 09-205078



**ZIMBABWE**

MINISTRY OF HEALTH  
AND CHILD WELFARE  
MPILOCENTRALHOSPITAL  
P O BOX 2096

**BULAWAYO**

12/12/ 2014

National University of Science and Technology  
P O Box AC 939  
Ascot  
Bulawayo

Attention: Josephine. S. Tityiwei

**RE: SEEKING PERMISSION TO CONDUCT RESEARCH AT MPIO  
CENTRAL HOSPITAL DIABETIC CLINIC**

Reference is made to your minute in connection with the above matter.

The Institution has no objection in you undertaking your study.

May you give us the results of your study.

Thank you.



Dr J. Moyo  
P O BOX 2096, BULAWAYO  
ZIMBABWE  
**CLINICAL DIRECTOR**  
**MPIO CENTRAL HOSPITAL**

---

Board Members: Mrs Sichelele Moyo Ncube-Chairperson, Dr L.O.S. Mantiziba-Chief Executive Officer, Mr Siqokoqela Mphoko, Mr Hudson Hlabangana, Mr Prince Kunaka, Dr Nomathemba Ndiweni Dr Goodness N. Msimanga



## Appendix N 1 Ultrasound practising certificate (Zimbabwe)

**AHPCZ** 20/2193



**ALLIED HEALTH PRACTITIONERS COUNCIL OF ZIMBABWE**  
20 Worcester Road, Eastlea, Harare. Phone: +263 242 747482/3, +263 771 056 413  
E-mail: [registrations@ahpcz.co.zw](mailto:registrations@ahpcz.co.zw), Website: [www.ahpcz.co.zw](http://www.ahpcz.co.zw)

**Health Professions Act  
(Chapter 27:19)**

**PRACTISING CERTIFICATE**

This is to certify that **Josephine S. Tityiwe**

Registration Number **A/SU0046**

Is authorised to practise as a **Diagnostic Radiographer and  
Specialist Ultrasonographer**

Condition/s  
**Nil**

This certificate expires on  
**31 December 2020**

DATE: 13 AUGUST 2020

REGISTRAR 



## Appendix N2 Ultrasound registration certificate (Zimbabwe)

**AHPCZ** SU0046



**ALLIED HEALTH PRACTITIONERS COUNCIL OF ZIMBABWE**  
Number 20 Worcester Road, Eastlea, Harare. Phone: +263 242 747482/3, +263 771 056 413  
E-mail: [registrations@ahpcz.co.zw](mailto:registrations@ahpcz.co.zw), Website: [www.ahpcz.co.zw](http://www.ahpcz.co.zw)

**Health Professions Act  
(Chapter 27:19)**

**REGISTRATION CERTIFICATE**

This is to certify that

**JOSEPHINE SEKAI TITYIWE**

is registered on the register of

**SPECIALIST ULTRASONOGRAPHERS**

kept by the Allied Health Practitioners Council of  
Zimbabwe

in accordance with the provisions of the  
Health Professions Act (Chapter 27:19)

Registration Number  
**A/SU0046**

DATE: 13 AUGUST 2020

REGISTRAR 

## Appendix O

### MRCZ Ethics approval

Telephone: 791792/791193  
Telefax: (263) - 4 - 790715  
E-mail: [mrcz@mrcz.org.zw](mailto:mrcz@mrcz.org.zw)  
Website: <http://www.mrcz.org.zw>



Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe  
Josiah Tongogara / Mazoe Street  
P. O. Box CY 573  
Causeway  
Harare

#### APPROVAL

REF: MRCZ/A/2036

08 April 2016

Josephine Tityiwe  
National University of Science and Technology  
P O Box AC 939  
Ascot  
Bulawayo

**RE:- Duplex ultrasound assessment of arterial disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients**

Thank you for the application for review of Research Activity that you submitted to the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe (MRCZ). Please be advised that the Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe has **reviewed** and **approved** your application to conduct the above titled study.

This approval is based on the review and approval of the following documents that were submitted to MRCZ for review:-

- Full proposal dated 16 February, 2016.
- Informed Consent Form dated 04 March, 2016 (English, Shona and Ndebele)

• **APPROVAL NUMBER** : MRCZ/A/2036

This number should be used on all correspondence, consent forms and documents as appropriate.

- **TYPE OF MEETING** : Full Board
- **EFFECTIVE APPROVAL DATE** : 08 April 2016
- **EXPIRATION DATE** : 07 April 2017

After this date, this project may only continue upon renewal. For purposes of renewal, a progress report on a standard form obtainable from the MRCZ Offices should be submitted three months before the expiration date for continuing review.

- **SERIOUS ADVERSE EVENT REPORTING:** All serious problems having to do with subject safety must be reported to the Institutional Ethical Review Committee (IERC) as well as the MRCZ within 3 working days using standard forms obtainable from the MRCZ Offices or website.
- **MODIFICATIONS:** Prior MRCZ and IERC approval using standard forms obtainable from the MRCZ Offices is required before implementing any changes in the Protocol (including changes in the consent documents).
- **TERMINATION OF STUDY:** On termination of a study, a report has to be submitted to the MRCZ using standard forms obtainable from the MRCZ Offices or website.
- **QUESTIONS:** Please contact the MRCZ on Telephone No. (04) 791792, 791193 or by e-mail on [mrcz@mrcz.org.zw](mailto:mrcz@mrcz.org.zw)

**Other**

- Please be reminded to send in copies of your research results for our records as well as for Health Research Database.
- You're also encouraged to submit electronic copies of your publications in peer-reviewed journals that may emanate from this study.

Yours Faithfully

MRCZ SECRETARIAT  
FOR CHAIRPERSON  
MEDICAL RESEARCH COUNCIL OF ZIMBABWE



PROMOTING THE ETHICAL CONDUCT OF HEALTH RESEARCH

## Appendix P

### Rutherford et al., (1997)'s classification for PAD.

Grade	Category	Clinical description	Objective criteria
0	0	Asymptomatic, no haemodynamically significant occlusive disease	Normal treadmill or reactive hyperaemia test
	1	Mild claudication	Completes treadmill exercise, Ankle pressure after exercise > 50mmHg but at least 20mmHg lower than resting value
1	2	Moderate claudication	Between categories 1 and 3
	3	Severe claudication	Cannot complete standard treadmill exercise and Ankle pressure after exercise < 50mmHg
II	4	Ischaemic rest pain	Resting Ankle pressure < 400mmHg, flat or barely pulsatile, Ankle or metatarsal pulse volume recording, Toe pressure < 30mmHg
III	5	Minor tissue loss-non healing ulcer, focal gangrene with diffuse pedal ischaemia	Resting Ankle pressure < 60mmHg, Ankle or metatarsal pulse volume recording flat or barely pulsatile, Toe pressure < 40mmHg.
	6	Major tissue loss extending above the trans-metatarsal level  Functional foot no longer salvageable.	Same as category 5

Rutherford et al., (1997); Hardman et al., (2014)



**Appendix Q1) Wavestream Ultrasound centre (PVT) LTD company  
incorporation certificate**

No. 965/2015	Receipt no: 9000577146329 US\$20	ORIGINAL COPY	
 ZIMBABWE			REGISTRAR OF COMPANIES CEX 2 2 SEP 2015 P.O. BOX 214, BULANWAYO ZIMBABWE
<h2>Certificate of Incorporation</h2>			
I hereby certify that <u>WAVE STREAM ULTRASOUND CENTRE (PRIVATE) LIMITED</u>			
is this day incorporated under the Companies Act [Chapter 24:03] and that the Company is Limited.			
Given under my Hand and Seal at <u>BULANWAYO</u>			
this <u>2ND</u> day of <u>AUGUST</u> , 20 <u>15</u>			
 Registrar of Companies			
Printed by <u>Whitfox (Private) Limited, Harare</u>			
Form C1			

**Appendix Q2) Wavestream Ultrasound centre (PVT) LTD company certificate**

Form No. CR5 ZIMBABWE Section 112 and 33D of Act  
Section 19 of Regulations

**COMPANIES ACT (CHAPTER 24:03)**

No. of Company 9649/2018

Notice of Situation and Postal address of a Company's Registered Office or of a foreign  
Company's Principal Place of Business, and of any change thereto

Name of Company: **Wave Stream Ultrasound Centre (Private) Limited**

TO THE REGISTRAR OF COMPANIES,  
**BULAWAYO**

The above-mentioned company hereby gives you notice that the registered office/principal  
place of business of the company:-

(a) (i) \*is/was situated at Suite 302A, 3<sup>rd</sup> Floor, Haylet House, Corner Josiah  
Tongogara and 9<sup>th</sup> Avenue, BULAWAYO

(ii) the postal address \*is/was at Suite 302A, 3<sup>rd</sup> Floor, Haylet House, Corner  
Josiah Tongogara and 9<sup>th</sup> Avenue, BULAWAYO

(b) has been changed from the above address to

(i) Situation at **NO CHANGE**

(ii) Postal Address at **NO CHANGE**


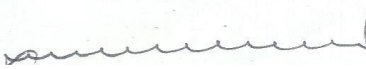
With effect from: **DATE OF INCORPORATION**

[Signature]  
(Signed) DIRECTOR/SECRETARY/CHIEF AGENT

This 28<sup>th</sup> day of August 2015  
(DATE) (MONTH)

Presented for filing by: **Josephine Sekai Tityiwe**  
**15 Welo Court**

**Appendix Q3 Health professions registration certificate for Wavestream  
Ultrasound centre (PVT) LTD**

	
<b>HEALTH PROFESSIONS AUTHORITY ZIMBABWE</b>	
HEALTH PROFESSIONS ACT: CHAPTER 27:19	
<b>Registration of Health Institution</b>	
CURRENT REG NO. <b>RA6092</b>	
<b>WAVESTEAM ULTRASOUND CENTRE (PVT) LTD</b>	
SITUATED AT	
<b>SUITE 302A, 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR, HAYLET HSE,</b>	
<b>BULAWAYO</b>	
Conditions:	
Name of Practitioner:	<b>MARTIN MAKONESE, RADIOGRAPHER/ULTRASONOGRAPHER</b>
This Certificate Expires On.....	
<b>15/07/2019</b>	



## Appendix Q4 Wavestream Ultrasound centre (PVT) LTD (Tax Clearance letter)



Zimbabwe Revenue Authority

### **Tax Clearance Certificate (ITF263)**

Tax Year Ending 31 December 2020

Wave Stream Ultrasound Centre (Pvt) Ltd Wave Stream Ultrasound

Business Partner Number: 0200171582

Your Tax position is Satisfactory. No 10% tax should be withheld

Clearance issued on 06/24/2020 at 13:43:06 valid until 09/23/2020

**Authentication code: ADTT.EQP1.G7XN.6KUD**

The authentication and validity of this certificate must be validated on ZIMRA page at: <http://efiling.zimra.co.zw>



**Appendix R**  
**The Adverse Events Summary**  
**MEDICAL RESEARCH COUNCIL OF ZIMBABWE INSTITUTIONAL REVIEW**  
**BOARDS**  
**ADVERSE EVENT SUMMARY TABLE**

Use BOLD print/type or bright colour highlighter to indicate events being newly submitted to the MRCZ. For

Patient ID Number	Date of Event	Date of Report	Site of Event	Severity	Brief Description of the Event	PI's Determination of Relationship of Event to Study/Product	Summary on How Event managed	Any other information/comments

guidelines see MRCZ Policy on Reporting Adverse Events - form.

*Please ensure that you complete and attach an individual adverse reporting form for each adverse event.*

## Appendix S1 Salford University ethics approval letter



University of  
**Salford**  
MANCHESTER

Research, Innovation and Academic  
Engagement Ethical Approval Panel

Research Centres Support Team  
60.3 Level Four  
University of Salford  
M6 6PU

T: 01442 3161 296, 2280

[www.salford.ac.uk](http://www.salford.ac.uk)

18 April 2017

Dear Josephine,

**RE: ETHICS APPLICATION-HSR1617-32-'Duplex ultrasound assessment of arterial disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients.'**

Based on the information you provided I am pleased to inform you that application HSR1617-32 has been approved.

If there are any changes to the project and/or its methodology, then please inform the Panel as soon as possible by contacting [Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk](mailto:Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk)

Yours sincerely,

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Sue McAndrew'.

Sue McAndrew  
Chair of the Research Ethics Panel

## Appendix S2 Salford University Ethics application form

### College Research Ethical Approval FILTER Form

**No research can be started without full, unconditional ethical approval.** There are several routes for obtaining ethical approval depending on the potential participants and type of study involved – please complete the checklists below to determine which is the most appropriate route for your research study.

#### A. Teaching & Learning Research (ROUTE FOR STAFF ONLY)

1.	Is the proposed study being undertaken by a member of UoS staff?	Yes	No
2.	Is the purpose of the study to evaluate the effectiveness of UoS teaching and learning practices by identifying areas for improvement, piloting changes and improvements to current practices or helping students identify and work on areas for improvement in their study practices?	Yes	No
3.	Will the study be explained to staff and students and their informed consent obtained?	Yes	No
4.	Will participants have the right to refuse to participate and to withdraw from the study?	Yes	No
5.	Will the findings from the study be used <b>solely</b> for internal purposes? <i>e.g. there is no intention to publish or disseminate the findings in journal articles or external presentations</i>	Yes	No
If you have answered <b>Yes to all Qs1-5</b> your study does not require UoS ethical approval as the work sits under enhancing the quality of teaching and learning.			
If you have answered <b>No to any of Qs1-5</b> you should complete the checklists below to determine which route you should use to apply for ethical approval of your study.			

#### B. National Research Ethics Service (NRES)

<b>To find out if your study requires ethical approval through NRES answer the questions below. Do your study:</b>			
1.	Involve access to NHS patients or their data, or involve participants identified from, or because of, their past or present use of NHS services?		No
2.	Include adults who cannot consent as research participants and/or those under 18 years of age.		No
3.	Involve the collection and/or use of human tissue as defined by the Human Tissue Act 2004? **		No
<p>If you have answered <b>Yes to any of Qs1-3</b> you should complete this application form, for University of Salford ethics review, you should have a response within 4weeks of submission. Once you have UoS approval you can then complete and submit the relevant NHS National Research Ethics Service (NRES) form. (The information from the UoS forms can be transferred onto the NRES forms) For further information and details of how to apply to NRES can be found at <a href="http://www.nres.nhs.uk/">http://www.nres.nhs.uk/</a></p>			
<p>If you have answered <b>No to Qs1-3</b> complete the checklist below to determine whether your application is eligible for Fast Track (proportionate) review or full review.</p>			

### C. Full versus 'Fast Track' (Proportionate Review)

<b>Does the proposed study:</b>			
1.	<p>Expose participants to high levels of risk or levels of risks beyond those which the participant is likely to encounter in their everyday activities? These risks may be psychological, physical, social, economic, cause legal harm or devalue a person's self-worth.</p> <p><i>e.g. untrained volunteers exposed to high levels of physical exertion; participants purposefully exposed to stressful situations; research where participants are persuaded to reveal information which they would not otherwise disclose in the course of everyday life.</i></p>		No
2.	Involve the administration of drugs, medicines or nutritional supplements as part of the research design?	Yes	
3.	Include adults who may be classed as vulnerable?		No



	<i>e.g. adults with learning disabilities or mental illness; drug/substance users; young offenders; prisoners/probationers; those in a dependent relationship with the researcher</i>		
4.	Include children or young adults (below 18)?		No
5.	Involve the discussion or disclosure of topics which participants might find sensitive or distressing? <i>e.g. sexual activity; criminal activity; drug use; mental health; previous traumatic experiences; illness; bereavement</i>		No
6.	Use questionnaires which focus on highly sensitive areas? <i>e.g. illegal activity; criminal activity; disclosure and analysis of findings based on sensitive personal information as defined by Data Protection Act e.g. racial or ethnic origin; political opinions; religious beliefs; trade union membership; physical or mental health; sexual life</i>		No
7.	Incorporate interviews or focus groups which involve the discussion of highly sensitive areas? <i>e.g. illegal activity; criminal activity; disclosure and analysis of findings based on sensitive personal information as defined by Data Protection Act e.g. racial or ethnic origin; political opinions; religious beliefs; trade union membership; physical or mental health; sexual life</i>		No
8.	For research accessing and analysing existing datasets. Will the dataset include information which would allow the identification of individual participants?		No
9.	Involve deliberately misleading participants in any way?		No
10.	Involve recruiting participants who have not been provided with a participant information sheet and asked to sign a consent form? <i>Please note that for questionnaire-based studies where the questionnaire is completed by the participant, a consent form is generally not required as consent is implied by the completion of the questionnaire. Applicants conducting <b>questionnaire-only</b> studies should answer NO</i>		No
11.	Involve the collection and/or use of human tissue from healthy volunteers? <i>Under these circumstances, human tissue is as defined by the Human Tissue Act 2004 - "Any, and all, constituent part/s of the human body formed by cells."</i>		No

	<i>Research studies involving the use of plasma or serum are not covered by the HTA.</i>		
12.	<p>Involve high levels of risks to the researcher?</p> <p><i>e.g. lone working at night; interviewing in your own or participants homes, observation in potentially volatile or sensitive situations</i></p>		No
<p>If you have answered <b>No to all Qs1-12</b> your study is eligible for 'fast track' review. You should complete the following application form and submit it electronically with any supporting documentation e.g. participant information sheets, recruitment material, consent forms to <a href="mailto:Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk">Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk</a>. Please ensure that your electronic submission is anonymised (all names removed) and that versions and dates are completed on the checklist with the same included on corresponding documents.</p> <p><b>Staff – please submit from your email address including your name and email in the body of the email</b></p> <p><b>Students – please ensure your application is submitted by your supervisor</b></p> <p><b>Supervisors – please submit the fully anonymised version of your student's application from your email account as a way of approving the application to be sent for review, please ensure in the body of the email you include the full name of your student (and cc them in)</b></p> <p>Your application will be reviewed by a sub-committee of the University REC and you will be informed of the outcome within 4 weeks. Please note that if the allocated reviewer finds that your application has been wrongly submitted for 'fast track' review you will be notified and your application will be forwarded for the full review which can take up to 6 weeks.</p>			
<p>If you have answered <b>Yes to any of Qs1-12</b> your study is not eligible for 'fast track' review and will be considered for the full review. You should complete the following application form and submit it electronically with any supporting documentation e.g. participant information sheets, recruitment letters, consent forms to <a href="mailto:Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk">Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk</a>. Please ensure that your electronic submission is anonymised (all names removed) and that versions and dates are completed on the checklist with the same included on corresponding documents.</p> <p><b>Staff – please submit from your email address including your name and email in the body of the email</b></p>			

**Students – please ensure your application is submitted by your supervisor**

**Supervisors – please submit the fully anonymised version of your student's application from your email account as a way of approving the application to be sent for review, please ensure in the body of the email you include the full name of your student (and cc them in)**

#### **College Research Ethical Approval Application Form CHECKLIST**

**Name of applicant:** Josephine S Tityiwe

**Programme of study:** PhD in Imaging (Online Doctorate) Full time (Distance Learning)

**School:** College of Health and Social Care.

**Title of Study:** Duplex ultrasound assessment of arterial disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients.

**Please tick which of the boxes below applies to your research:**

NRES

☐

'Fast Track'

☐

Full review

☐

(Proportionate review)

The checklist **MUST BE COMPLETED**. It is designed to help you to ensure that you have all the supporting documents submitted with your ethics application form. This information is necessary for the committee to be able to review and approve your application. Please complete the relevant boxes indicating whether a document is enclosed and where appropriate identifying the **date and version** number allocated to the specific document (*in the header/footer*). Additional documents can be recorded in the boxes provided or extra boxes added to the list if necessary.

Document	Enclosed? (circle appropriate response)		Date	Version No	Office Use
	Yes	No			
Application Form	Mandatory		13/07 /2016	1.1	
Protocol	Optional				
Risk Assessment Form	<b>Mandatory</b>  Required for this project since beetroot juice will be used as an intervention to be administered to the subjects orally.  An adverse reaction form, from MRCZ, will be used to assess risk from prolonged oral intake of beetroot juice, under the management of Specialist physicians. <b>See Appendix L</b> for the MRCZ adverse reaction form.  A pilot study will also be done before the beginning of phase 2 of the study where beetroot juice will be administered to subjects and monitored under clinical settings.		13/07/ 2016	1.1	

DBS Check		<b>No</b>  The sample will exclude vulnerable adults and children, but adults within the Zimbabwean legal age of consent thus 18 years and above.	13/07/2016	1.1	
Participant Invitation Letter	<b>Yes</b>  See <b>Appendix J</b> for more detail on the participants' invitation letter.		13/07/2016	1.1	
Participant Information Sheet	<b>Yes</b>  See <b>Appendix I</b> for more detail on the MRCZ information sheet.		13/07/2016	1.1	
Participant Consent Form	<b>Yes</b>  See <b>Appendix I</b> for more detail on the MRCZ Consent forms.		13/07/2016	1.1	
Participant Recruitment Material - e.g. copies of Posters,	<b>Yes</b>  See <b>Appendix C</b> for more detail on the mass e-mail		13/07/2016	1.1	

newspaper adverts, website, emails	advert for recruitment of the control group participants from NUST.				
Organisation Management Consent/Agreement Letter	<b>Yes</b>  Permission letters from the private radiology centre, Mpilo central hospital and The Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe. <b>See attached PDF documents</b> for more detail on the institutional agreement letters.		13/07/2016	1.1	
Research instrument validated questionnaire		<b>No</b>	13/07/2016	1.1	
Research instrument, non-validated questionnaire	<b>Yes</b>  Social medical history questionnaire see <b>Appendix D</b> for more detail of the social medical history questionnaire		13/07/2016	1.1	
Draft Interview guide/ Topic guides for participants		<b>No</b>			

**NOTE:** If the appropriate documents are not submitted with the application form then the application will be returned directly to the applicant and will need to be re-submitted at a later date thus delaying the approval process.

## College Research Ethical Approval APPLICATION Form

Ethical Approval Form for Staff and Postgraduates Research (PGR) students

**Ethical approval must be obtained by all applicants before starting research with human subjects, animals or human tissue.**

Postgraduate students **must** discuss the content of this form with their PhD supervisor(s). A final copy of this application form should be agreed between the student and supervisor(s). Staff must submit a fully anonymised version to Research Centres Support Team ([Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk](mailto:Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk)), students must have their fully anonymised application submitted by their supervisor (from the supervisors' email account) to Research Centres Support Team ([Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk](mailto:Health-ResearchEthics@salford.ac.uk))

**Is this application a resubmission?** *(delete as appropriate)*

Yes

If **Yes**, please indicate Ref No. *(if known)*

**HSCR15/37**

**Is this an amended version of the original application?** (Please ensure that the changes are highlighted within the documents) *(delete as appropriate)*

No

<b>Name of PGR student:</b>	<b>Josephine S Tityiwe</b>
<b>PGR student qualifications:</b>	<b>MSc Professional Development studies,(UK), DDR,(UZ), PGDHE,(NUST ZIM), CMU, (Burwin Canada)</b>
<b>School:</b>	<b>College of Health Sciences</b>
<b>The course of study:</b> <i>(PGR use only)</i>	<b>PhD in Imaging (Online Doctorate) Full time (Distance Learning)</b>
<b>Supervisor(s):</b>	Dr Gillian Crofts: Supervisor  Dr Paul Comfort: Co-Supervisor  Dr Godfrey Azangwe: Local Advisor

**Start date of project:**

**October 2014**

**The end date of the project:**

**October 2017**

**The proposed start date for participant recruitment:**

**27 July 2016**

**Will this project take place on University premises?**

☐

**No**



*(delete as appropriate)*

☐☐

If you answer 'yes' to any of the above questions, a risk assessment of the project is required and **MUST** be submitted with the application.

**Is a DBS check required?** *(delete as appropriate)*

☐☐☐ **No**

**Have you read the Lone Worker Policy?** *(delete as appropriate)*

☐☐ **Yes**☐

The form must be completed electronically; the sections can be expanded to the size required but not exceeding the word count specified. To assist you with the completion of this form there are 'Guidance Notes for Completing the College Research Ethics Approval Form' on the website (<http://www.salford.ac.uk/chsc/research/staff-pgr-students-research-ethics>) which indicates what is required for each section.

**1. Title of the proposed research project** *(refer to guidelines section 1)*

**Duplex ultrasound assessment of arterial disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients.**

## Appendix T, Beetroot juice import duty certificate



### Goods Received Note

G.R.N. No. **04143**

### National University of Science and Technology

Cnr Gwanda Road and Cecil Avenue, P.O. Box AC 939, Ascot, Bulawayo, Zimbabwe,  
Telephones: 289265, 280308, 289557, 288413, 289435, Fax: 263-9-286803

From: (Supplier) NEAKS YARD HEALTH ORDER No CASH  
SHOP (PTY) LTD  
SOUTH AFRICA  
 TO: (Receiving) NUST Delivery Note No.....  
APPLIED PHYSICS Invoice No.....  
 Requisition No —  
 Requisition By TITILE  
 Date 08/09/2016

Item No.	Item Code	Item description	Unit	Qty Ordered	Qty Received	Unit Cost	Total Value	Balance
1.		Beet Active Concentrate	237ml	100	100	R210	21000	-
<div style="position: relative; width: 100%; height: 100%;"> <div style="position: absolute; top: 0; left: 0; width: 100%; height: 100%; border-left: 2px solid black; border-bottom: 2px solid black;"></div> </div>								
		TAX 14%				R	2940.00	
		TOTAL				R	23940.00	

Alpha Print-4874

Stores / Buying Officer: Name: T. KHUMALO Signature: [Signature] Designation: ACC/ASST Date: 08/09/2016

User: Name: Josephine Tityane Signature: [Signature] Designation: Lecturer Date: 08/09/2016

Remarks: .....

**Distribution:** Original (White Copy)—Payments, Duplicate (Blue)—User, Triplicate (Yellow) —Purchasing



## Appendix U

### MRCZ Acknowledgement letter

Telephone: 791792/791193  
Telefax: (263) - 4 - 790715  
E-mail: [mrcz@mrcz.org.zw](mailto:mrcz@mrcz.org.zw)  
Website: <http://www.mrcz.org.zw>



Medical Research Council of Zimbabwe  
Josiah Tongogara / Mazoe Street  
P. O. Box CY 573  
Causeway  
Harare

Ref: MRCZ/A/2036

06 June, 2017

Josephine Tityiwe  
NUST  
Applied Physics Department  
P.O. Box AC 939,  
Ascot  
**Bulawayo**

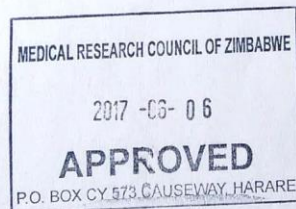
**RE:Amendment: Duplex Ultrasound Assessment of Arterial Disease In The Lower Limbs Of Zimbabwean Diabetic Patients.**

We refer to your correspondence dated 03 June, 2017 on the above mentioned subject

Please be advised that the MRCZ has **reviewed and approved** the amendments to split the consent form into two for each work package, and revision of data collection tools.

Correspondingly the following have been approved:

- Informed Consent form work package 1 (English)
- Informed Consent form work package 2 (English)
- Protocol



Yours Faithfully

MRCZ SECRETARIAT  
FOR CHAIRPERSON  
**MEDICAL RESEARCH COUNCIL OF ZIMBABWE**

PROMOTING THE ETHICAL CONDUCT OF HEALTH RESEARCH

## Appendix V1, Research board first grant

RB/RR3/2016

### NATIONAL UNIVERSITY OF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY RESEARCH BOARD REPORT BACK FORM FOR RESEARCH GRANT (2016)

1. **Name of Investigator/s** (Indicate the principal Investigator): Josephine S Tityiwe
2. **Faculty:** Applied Sciences
3. **Department:** Applied Physics
4. **E-mail address:** josephine.tityiwe@nust.ac.zw
5. **Tel ext:** 2282
6. **Position of Applicant (s):** Lecturer
7. **Beneficiary(s)**
  - a) **Name:** Josephine s Tityiwe
  - b) **Position:** Lecturer
8. **Financial Support**

**Table 1 Research budget Breakdown for the supplying companies**

Capital items	NUMBER OF ITEMS	COST PER ITEM (US\$)	TOTAL COST (US\$)
High Resolution Linear array transducer (10MHz), 10L24EA (Inclusive of 15% VAT, Duties and Surtax.) <b>CS Medical Company</b>	1	350.00	350.00
Beetroot juice bottles( 210ml 100% concentrate) <b>CS Medical Company</b>	30	28.00	840.00
Plethysmography machine <b>CS Medical Company</b>	1	2 900.00	2 900.00
Ultrasound gel- <b>CS Medical Company</b>	2x5Litres	24.00	48.00
Digital Seca scale <b>CS Medical Company</b>	1	150.00	150.00
<b>Sub Total payment to CS Medical</b>			4 288.00
Medical tops <b>Jay and Jay Dress Makers</b>	4	15.00	60.00
Pillow cases <b>Jay and Jay dressmakers</b>	8	4.00	32.00
Patients covering sheets <b>Jay and Jay dressmakers</b>	10	5.00	50.00
Patients Gowns <b>Jay and Jay dressmakers</b>	15	8.00	120.00
<b>Sub-total payment to Jay and jay dressmakers.</b>			262.00
Photocopying expenses <b>The print express and general supplies company</b>	4 000 A4pages		70.00
Patients Refreshments, juice cans	100	1.00	100.00
<b>Total amount granted</b>			4 720.00

#### 9. Project: Title

- a) Duplex ultrasound assessment of arterial disease in the lower limbs of Zimbabwean diabetic patients.



## Appendix V2 Research Board second grant

RB/RR3/2016

- b) Duration: 3 years
- c) RB No. Amended paper RB/38/15
- d) Annual report
- e) Report Period – May 2016 ongoing to October 2017

**f) Report (+200 words)**

I was granted a research grant amounting to US\$4 720.00 on the 12<sup>th</sup> of May 2016 to buy capital items for my PhD research work and the money was spent as outlined in table 1 above. However second application for the research grant is being made to cover the remaining test for Urea and Creatinine and extra beetroot juice needed for the research work since these expenses could not fit into the first budget of \$4 720.03 which was granted on the 12<sup>th</sup> of May 2016. The budget breakdown for the required items is outlined in table 2 below:

**Table 2 Second budget application for funding**

Capital items	NUMBER OF ITEMS	COST PER ITEM (US\$)	TOTAL COST (US\$)
Urea and Creatinine Tests	200 subjects	\$5.00	\$1 000.00
Beetroot juice bottles( 210ml 100% concentrate each diluting to 2litres)	142 bottles	\$28.00	\$3 976.00
Refreshments for patients	24 cans	\$1.00	\$24.00
<b>Total for Capital Items</b>			<b>\$5 000.00</b>
<b>Budget into block allocation</b>			
Transport for patients.	200 patients	\$1.00	\$200.00
Refreshments for patients	20 juice cans	\$1.00	\$20.00
<b>Total for block allocation budget</b>			<b>\$220.00</b>

10. Collaborator (s): None

**Publication(s):**

Tityiwe, J., and Crofts, G.,(2015), An Ultrasound Based Protocol for Vascular Assessment of The Diabetic Lower Limb in Zimbabwe', UKRC#29/06/2015#01/07/2015#Liverpool#UK.  
<https://www.seek.salford.ac.uk/user/profile/publications/view.do?publicationNum=43811>

Tityiwe, J., and Crofts, G., (2012), Role Development by Radiographers into Clinical Radiography Reporting, [www.nzimrt.co.nz/userfiles/file/NZIMRT,isrrt\\_NOV\\_2012.pdf](http://www.nzimrt.co.nz/userfiles/file/NZIMRT,isrrt_NOV_2012.pdf)

<https://www.seek.salford.ac.uk/user/profile/publications/view.do?publicationNum=37187>

Investigator's Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date 24/05/2016  
 Faculty Representative's Signature [Signature] Date 26<sup>th</sup> May 2016

## Appendix W1 Brachytherapy Quality Assurance Phantom

**Distributed by: Universal Medical Inc.**  
[www.universalmedicalinc.com](http://www.universalmedicalinc.com)

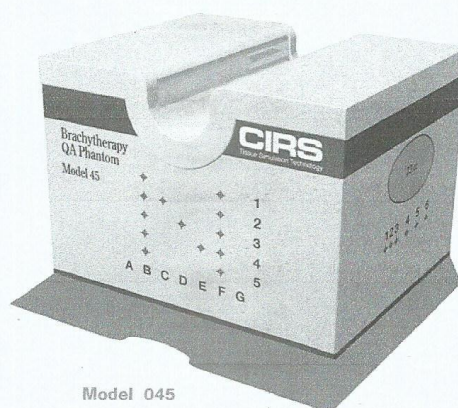


### **045 Brachytherapy QA Phantom**

*Perform QA on sidefire  
transrectal probes*

The CIRS series of ultrasound phantoms, unlike human subjects or random scannable materials, offer a reliable medium which contains specific, known test objects for repeatable qualitative assessment of ultrasound scanner performance over time.

The Model 045 was designed for transrectal ultrasound QA and calibration of brachytherapy systems. It contains targets to assess volume measurements, internal grid accuracy, and probe retraction accuracy. When scanning towards the top of the phantom, a partial grid of wires appears. These wires should line up with the grid that appears on your screen thus ensuring correct vertical



Model 045

and horizontal distance measurements.

Five cross wires are embedded within the phantom to determine if the probe is being retracted the specified

distance. Turn the probe 60° to the right or left to visualize and measure the volume of three different calibrated objects, one of which is non-spherical.

#### **Features**

- Internal grid assessment
- Probe retraction step assessment
- Volume verification

™ US PATENT #5196343

125  
042205



Appendix W 2 Brachytherapy Phantom Quality Control tests

Model 045  
Specifications

**MATERIAL:** Zerdine ®(1)

**ATTENUATION COEFFICIENT:**  
0.50 ± 0.05 dB/cm/MHz

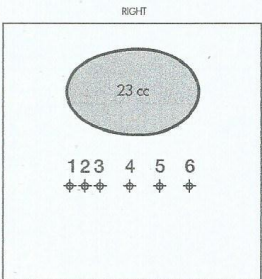
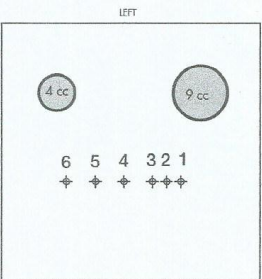
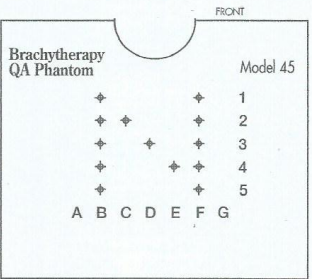
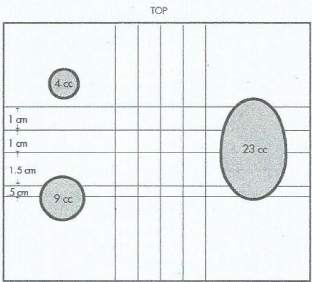
**SPEED OF SOUND:**  
1540 m/s ± 6 m/s

**TARGETS:**

**Internal Grid Assessment:**  
Material: Nylon Monofilament  
Diameter: 0.5 mm  
Number of Targets: 13  
Position: B1 - B5, C4, D3, F1 - F5

**Probe Retraction Assessment:**  
Material: Nylon Monofilament  
Diameter: 0.5 mm  
Number of Targets: 5  
Spacing: 0.1 cm, 1 cm, 1 cm, 1.5 cm  
and 0.5 cm  
Position: along row 4

**Volumes:**  
Material: Zerdine®(1)  
Sizes: approximately 4 cc,(S)  
9 cc,(M) and 23 cc(L). Exact  
volumes provided on certification  
sheet.



## 7.9 References

- Andersen, C.A. (2010) Non-invasive assessment of lower extremity haemodynamics in individuals with diabetes mellitus. *Journal of Vascular Surgery*, 52:765-805.
- Bahadoran, Z., Ghasemi, A., Mirmiran, P., Azizi, F., and Hadaegh, F., (2015) Beneficial effects of inorganic nitrate/nitrite in type II diabetes and its complications, Review, *Nutrition and Metabolism*, 12: 16 Doi:10.1186/512986-015-0013-6.
- Bahra, M., Kapil, V., Pearl, V., Ghosh, S., and Ahlawalia, A. (2012) Inorganic nitrate ingestion improves vascular compliance but does not alter flow-mediated dilatation in healthy volunteers, *Nitric Oxide*, 26, 197-202.
- Bailey, S. J., Winyard, P., Vanhatalo, A., Blackwell, J. R., Dimenna, F.J., Wilkerson, D. P., Tarr, J., Benjamin, N., and Jones, A.M. (2009) Dietary nitrate supplementation reduces the oxygen cost of low-intensity exercise and enhance tolerance to high-density exercise in humans, *Journal of Applied Physiology*; 107:1144-55.
- Bhatia, V. Arya, V., Dabadghao, P., Balasubramanian, K., Sharma, K., and Verghese, N. (2004) Aetiology and outcome of childhood and adolescent diabetes mellitus in North India, *Journal of Paediatric Endocrinology and Metabolism* (17):993-9.
- Biswas, K., Hassan, Z., Zinnat, R., Islam. L., Azad Khan, A., Ali, L. (2006) The role of proinsulin in the pathogenesis of young-onset diabetes in Bangladeshi patients, *Diabetic Medicine*, 23 (suppl 4) 411-607.
- Bond, H., Morton, L., and Braakhuis, A. J. (2012) Dietary nitrate supplementation improves rowing performance in well-trained rowers. *International Journal of Sports Nutrition and Exercise Metabolism*, 22(4), 251-256.



Cacoub, P.P., Bhatt, D.L., Steg, P.G., Topol, E.J., Creager, M.A., CHARISMA investigators, (2009), Patients with peripheral arterial disease in the CHARISMA trial, *European heart journal*, 30: 192-201.

Carthy, E.R. (2013) Lower limb peripheral arterial disease (Clinical guideline 147) A Guideline summary, *Annals of Medicine and Surgery*, 2(1):26-30.

Clements, W.T., Lee, S-R., and Bloomer, R. J., (2014) Nitrate ingestion: A Review of Health and physical performance effects, *Nutrients*, 6, 5224-5264 DOI: 10.3390/nu6115.

Clifford, T., Howatson, G., West, D.J., and Stevenson, E. J. (2015) The Potential benefits of red beetroot supplementation in health and disease, *Nutrients*, 7, 2801-2822.

Chavhan, G.B., Parra, D.A., Mann, A., and Navarro, O. M. (2008) Normal Doppler spectral waveforms of major paediatric vessels: specific patterns, *Radiographics*, 28:691-706 DOI: 10.1148/rg.283075095.

Chen, Y-W, Wang, Y-Y, Zhao, D, Yu, C-G, Xin, Z, Cao, X, et al. (2015) High Prevalence of Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease in Type 2 Diabetes Patients with Proliferative Diabetic Retinopathy. *PLoS ONE*; 10(3): e0122022. DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0122022.

Collins. R., Cranny, G., Burch, J., Aguiar-Ibanez, R., Craig, D., Wright, K., Berry, E., Gough, M., Kleijnen, J., and Westwood, M. (2007) A systematic review of Duplex ultrasound, Magnetic Resonance Angiography and Computed Tomography Angiography for the diagnosis and assessment of symptomatic lower limb peripheral arterial disease, *Health Technology Assessment*, 11 (20).

Colunga-Lozano, L.E., Gonzalez Torres, F.J., Delgado-Figueroa, N., Gonzalez-Padilla, D.A., Hernandez, A.V., Roman, Y., Cuello-García, C.A., (2018) Sliding scale insulin for non-critically ill hospitalised adults with diabetes mellitus,

Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2018, Issue 11. Art. No.: CD011296.  
DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD011296.pub2.

Cormack, S. J., Newton, R. U., McGuigan, M. R., and Doyle, T. I. (2008) Reliability of measures obtained during single and repeated countermovement jumps, *International Journal of Sports Physiology and Performance* 3(2): 131-144 PubMed.

Cossman, D.V., Ellison, J. E., and Wagner, W. H. (1989) Comparison of contrast arteriography to arterial mapping with colour-flow duplex imaging in the lower extremities. *Journal of Vascular Surgeons*, 10:522–9.

Criqui, M.H., Froneka, A., Barret-Conner, E., Klauber, M.R., Gabriel, S., Goodman, D., (1985), The prevalence of PAD in a defined population, *circulation*, 71, 510-5

Cutler, J. A., Sorlie, P. D., Wolz, M., Thom, T., Fields, L. E., Rocella, E. J., (2008) Trends in Hypertension prevalence awareness, treatment and control rates in united states adults between 1988 -1994 and 1999 – 2004, *Hypertension*, 52 (52), 810 - 27

Davignon, J., and Ganz. (2004) Role of endothelial dysfunction in atherosclerosis, *Circulation*, 109, 27-32.

Demiris, G., and Washington, K.T., (2019), in Behavioural Intervention Research in Hospice and Palliative Care, Building an Evidence Base, 27-39, <https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-814449-700003-x>

Dickerson, J.B., Smith, M.L., Benden, M.C., Ory, M.G (2011), The association of physical activity, sedentary behaviours and body mass index classification in a cross-sectional analysis: are the effects homogenous, *Biomedical Central public health*, 11(926).

Di Minno, G., Spadarella, G., Cafaro, G., Petitto, M., Lupoli, R., Di Minno, A., de Gaetano, G., and Tremoli E. (2014) Systematic reviews and Meta-analyses for more profitable strategies in peripheral artery disease, *Annals of Medicine* (1-15) DOI: 10.3109/07853890.2014.932618.

Doel, J. J.; Benjamin, N.; Hector, M. P.; Rogers, M.; Allaker, R. P. (2005) Evaluation of bacterial nitrate reduction in the human oral cavity. *European Journal of Oral Sciences*, 113, 14–19.

Dhaliwal, G., Mukherjee, D., (2007) Peripheral arterial disease: epidemiology, natural history, diagnosis and treatment, *International Journal of Angiology*, 16 (2):36-44.

Dzinotizei, M. (2013) Zimbabwe Census 2012 National Report, [www.zimstat.co.zw](http://www.zimstat.co.zw) [accessed 03/2018].

Egan, B. M., Zhao, Y., Axon, R. N., (2010), US trends in prevalence, awareness, treatment and control of Hypertension, 1988-2008, *Journal of American Medical Association*, 303, 2043-50.

Franz, R.W., Jump, M.A., Spalding, M.C., Jenkins II, J.J. (2013), Accuracy of Duplex ultrasonography in the estimation of the severity of the peripheral vascular disease, *international journal of Angiology*, 22 (3).

Fowkes, G.R., Rudan, I., Rudan, D., Aboyans, V., Deneberg, J.O., McDermott, M.M., Norman, P.E., Sampson, U, K. A., Williams, L.J., Mensah, G.A., and Criqui, M. H. (2013) Comparison of global estimates of prevalence and risk factors for peripheral artery disease in 2000 and 2010: A systematic review analysis, *The Lancet*, 382 (9901), 1329-1340.

Fowkes, F.G., Housley, E., Cawood, C.H., Macintyre, C.C., Ruckley, C.V., Prescott, R.J., (1991), Edinburgh artery study: Prevalence of asymptomatic and symptomatic PAD in the general population, *International journal of epidemiology*, 20 (2), 384-392.

Gerhard-Herman, M., Gardin, J. M, Jaf. M., Mohler, E., Roman, M., and Tasneem, Z. N. (2006) Guidelines for Non-invasive vascular laboratory testing; a report from the American Society of Vascular Medicine and Biology, *American Society of Echocardiography*, DOI: 10.1016/j.echo.2006.04.019.

Gerhard-Herman, M. D., Gornik, H.L., Barret, C., Barshes, N.R., Corriere, M.A., Drachman, D.E., Fleisher, L. A., Fowkes, F.G.R., Humburg, N.M., Kinlay. S., Lookstein, R., Misra, S., Mureebe. L., Olin, J.W., Patel, R.A.G., Regensteiner, J.G., Schanzer, A., Shishehbor, M.H., Stewart, K. J., Treat-Jacobson, K. J., Walsh, W. E., (2016), Clinical practice guideline, AHA/ACC Guideline on the Management of Patients With Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease, *Journal of the American Colleg of Cardiology*, Elsevier, 69 (11, <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2016.11.007>.

Goodsitt, M. M., Carson, P. L., Witt, S., Hykes, D. L, Kofler, J. M. Jr. (1998) Real-time B-mode Ultrasound quality control test procedures Report of AAP Ultrasound Task Group number 1, *Medical Physics*, 25 (8).

Hamments, D., Vascular Technology, the Burwin Institute of Diagnostic Medical Ultrasound V14A. [www.burwin.com](http://www.burwin.com) [accessed 01/2014].

Higashi, Y., Sasaki, S., Nakagawa, K., Matsuura, H., Kajiyama, G., and Oshima, T. (2001) A non-invasive measurement of reactive hyperaemia that can be used to assess resistance artery endothelial function in humans. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 87:121-125. A129.

Hirsch, A. T., Haskal, Z.J., Hertzner, N.R., Bakal, C.W., Creager, M.A., Halperin, J.L., Hiratzka, L.F., Murphy, W.R.C., Olin, J.W., Puschett, J.B., Rosenfield, K.A., Sacks, D., Stanley, J.C., Taylor, L.M Jr., White, C.J., White, J., White, R.A., ACC/AHA 2005 practice guidelines for the management of patients with peripheral arterial disease (lower extremity, renal, mesenteric, and abdominal aortic): a collaborative report from the American Association for Vascular Surgery/Society for Vascular Surgery, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography

and Interventions, Society for Vascular Medicine and Biology, Society of Interventional Radiology, and the ACC/AHA Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Develop Guidelines for the Management of Patients With Peripheral Arterial Disease). *Circulation*. 2006; 113:e463– e654. DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.174526.

Hobbs, D. A, Kaffa. N, George, T. W, Methven, L, Lovegrove, J. A. (2012) Blood pressure-lowering effects of beetroot juice and Novel beetroot enriched bread products in normotensive male subjects. *British Journal of Nutrition*; 108:2066-74.

Hodgkiss-Harlow, K. D and Bandyk, D. F. (2014) Interpretation of arterial duplex testing of lower extremity arteries and interventions, *Seminars in Vascular Surgery*, 26: 95-104 [www.elsevier.com/locate/semvascsurg](http://www.elsevier.com/locate/semvascsurg).

Hord, N.G., Tang, Y., Bryn, N. S. (2009) Food sources of Nitrates and Nitrites, The Physiological Context for Potential health benefits, *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 90:1-10.

Huang, Z., Shiva, S., Kim-Shapiro, D. B., Patel, R. P., Ringwood, L. A., Irby, C. E., Huang, K.T., Ho, C., Hogg, N., Schechter, A.N and Gladwin, M.T. (2005) Enzymatic Function of Haemoglobin as a nitrite reductase that produces NO under allosteric control, *Journal of Clinical Investigations*, 115: 2099-2107.

Eisenstein, M., Kohler, C. S., Reynolds., Pott's, S., Garret, J., Newton, K., Baldino, N. C., Rice, O., Hall, L.A, Crowl, D., and Graff, J. D. (2017) American Diabetic Association, Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes, Diabetes Care (2017) *Journal of Clinical and Applied Research and Education*, 40 (Suppl 1):53/ Doi:10.2337/dc17-5002.

Eiberg, J.P., Gronvall-Rasmussen, J.B., Hansen, M.A., and Schroeder, T.V. (2010) Duplex Ultrasound scanning of peripheral arterial disease of the lower limb, *European Society of Vascular Surgery*, Elsevier, DOI: 10.1016/j.ejvs.2010.06.002.

Gilchrist, M., Winyard, P.G., Aizawa, K., Anning, C., Shore, A and Benjamin, N. (2013) Effect of dietary nitrate on blood pressure, endothelial function and insulin sensitivity in type II diabetes, *Free Radical Biological Medicine*, 60, 89 – 97.

Gilchrist, M., Winyard, P.G., Fulford, J., and Benjamin, N. (2014) Dietary Nitrate Supplementation improves reaction time in Type 2 Diabetes: Development and application of a novel nitrate depleted beetroot juice placebo, *Nitric Oxide*, 40: 67-74, DOI: 10.1016/15.niox.2014.05.003

Glen, S (2015), "Convenience Sampling (Accidental Sampling): Definition, Examples" Statistics for the rest of us, <https://www.statisticshowto.com> [accessed 12/2020]

Hakim, J. G., Mujuru, N., Rusakaniko, S., and Gomo, Z. A. R. (2005) Zimbabwe Non-Communicable Diseases Risk factors Surveillance report, Ministry of Health and Child Care.

Hardman, R. L., Jazaeri, O., Yi, O., Smith, M., and Gupta, R. (2004) Overview of classification systems in Peripheral Artery Disease, *Seminars in Interventional Radiology*, 31 (4).

Hartshorne, T. C., McCollum, C. N., Earnshaw, J. J., Morris, J and Nasim, A. (2011) Ultrasound measurement of aortic diameter in a national screening programme, *European Journal of Surgery*, 42 (2), 195-9, DOI: 10.1016/j.ejvs.2011.02.030.

Hernando, F. J and Conejero, A. M. (2007) Peripheral Artery Disease: Pathophysiology, Diagnosis and Treatment, *Revista Espanola Cardiologia*, 60 (9), 969-82.

Hobbs, D. A, Kaffa, N, George, T. W, Methven, L, and Lovegrove, J. A (2012) Blood pressure-lowering effects of beetroot juice and Novel beetroot enriched

bread products in normotensive male subjects. *British Journal of Nutrition*; 108:2066-74.

Harrington, C., Sonography Principles and Instrumentation, the Burwin Institute, [www.burwin.com](http://www.burwin.com) [accessed 12/2012].

Hyde, E. R.; Andrade, F.; Vaksman, Z.; Parthasarathy, K.; Jiang, H.; Parthasarathy, D. K.; Torregrossa, A.C.; Tribble, G.; Kaplan, H.B.; Petrosino, J. F. (2014), Metagenomic analysis of nitrate-reducing bacteria in the oral cavity: Implications for nitric oxide homeostasis. *PLoS One*, 9, e88645.

Hwang, J.Y., (2017) Doppler Ultrasonography of the lower extremities: Anatomy and Scanning guidelines, *Ultrasonography*, 36:111-119

International Diabetic Federation (2015) [www.idf.org](http://www.idf.org) [accessed June 2015].

Joris, P. J., and Mensink, R. P. (2013) Beetroot juice improves in overweight and slightly obese men postprandial endothelial function after consumption of a mixed meal. *Atherosclerosis*, 231, 78-83.

Jude, E. B. (2004) Intermittent claudication in the patient with diabetes. *British Journal of Diabetes and Vascular Disease*, 13: 238-242 DOI: 10.1177/14746514040040040401.

Kaku, K. (2010) Pathophysiology of Type diabetes and its treatment policy, *Japan Medical Association Journal*, 53 (10): 41-46.

Kannady, J. A., Aruni, A.W, Ninnis, J. R. (2012) Nitrate reductive activity of bacteria in the saliva of term and preterm infants. PMC 3466899, *Nitric Oxide*, 27(4): 191-200 Doi: 10.1016/j.niox.2012.07.004 epub 2012.

Kapil, V., Milson, A.B., Okorie, M., Maleki-Toyserkani, S., Akram, F., Rehman, F., Arghandawi, S., Pael, V., Benjamin, N., Loukogeorgakis, S., MacAllister, R, Hobbs, A. J., Webb, A. J., and Ahluwani, A. (2010) Inorganic Nitrate

Supplementation lowers blood pressure in humans, Role of Nitrite Derived NO, *Hypertension*, .56,274-281 DOI: 10.1161/hypertenstionAHA.110.153536.

Kapil, V., Khambata, R.S., Robertson, A., Caulfield, M. J., and Ahluwalia, A. (2015) Dietary nitrate provides sustained blood pressure lowering in hypertensive patients: a randomised phase 2, double-blind placebo-controlled study, *Hypertension*, 65 (2): 320-327.

Doi:10.1161/HYPERTENSIONAHA.114.04675

Kenjale, A. A., Ham, K. L., Stabler, T., Robbins, J. L, Johnson, J. L., Van Bruggen, M., Privette, G., Yim, e., Kraus, W. E., and Allen, J. D. (2011) Dietary Nitrate supplementation enhances exercise performance in peripheral arterial disease, *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 110:1582-1591

DOI: 10.1152/J Appl Physiol.00071.2011.

Kiboki, K., Jiang, Z., Y., Takahara, N., Ha, S.W., Igarashi, M., Yamauchi, T., Feener, E. P., Herget, T. P., Rhodes, C. J., King, G. I. (2000) Regulation of endothelial constitutive nitric oxide synthase gene expression in endothelial cells and *in vivo*, *Circulation*, 101:676-681

Kim. I., Moon, S.O., Kim, S.H., Kim, J.K.J., Koh, Y.S., Koh, G.Y. (2001) Vascular endothelial growth factor expression of intracellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1) Vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM) (VCAM-1) and E Selective through nuclear factor -kappa B activation in endothelial cells, *Journal of Biology and Biochemistry*, 276,7614-7626

Kimberlin, C.L., and Winterstein, A. G. (2008) Validity and Reliability of measurement instruments used in Research. *American Journal of Health-Systems Pharmacists*, 65:2276-84



Koo, T. K., and Li, M. Y. (2016) A Guideline of selecting and reporting Intraclass correlation coefficients for reliability research, *Journal of Chiropractic Medicine*, 15, 155-163

Klabunde, R. E. (2007) Peripheral Arterial Occlusive Disease, *Cardiovascular Physiology Concepts*,

[www.cvphysiology.com/peripheral\\_vascular\\_disease/PVD002.htm](http://www.cvphysiology.com/peripheral_vascular_disease/PVD002.htm). [Accessed 01/2015]

Laurent, S., Boutouyre, P., Asmar, R., Gautier, I., Laloux, B., Guize, L., Ducimetier, P., Beretos, A., (2001) Arterial stiffness and mortality, *Hypertension*, 37, 1236-1241.

Lakens, D. (2013) Calculating and reporting effect sizes to facilitate cumulative science: practical primer t-tests and ANOVA, *Frontiers in Psychology*, 4; 863, PMC3840331.

Leiner, T., Kessels, A.G.H., Nelemans, P.J., Boudewijn, G., Vasbinder, C., de Haan, M.W., Kitslaar, P.E.J.H, Ho, K.Y.J.A.M., Tordoir, J.H.M., Van Engelshoven, J.M.A., (2005), Peripheral arterial disease: comparison of colour duplex ultrasound and contrast-enhanced Magnetic Resonance Angiography for diagnosis, *vascular and interventional Radiology*,

<https://doi.org/10.1148/radiol.2352040089>

Lidder, S., and Webb, A. J. (2013) Vascular effects of dietary nitrate (as found in green leafy vegetables and beetroot) via the nitrate-nitrite-nitric oxide pathway, *British Journal of Pharmacology*, 75, 677-696.

Lee, P., Liu, C., Fan, C., Lu, C., Lu, W., Hsieh, C. (2013) The test-retest reliability and the minimal detectable change of the Purdue Pegboard test in Schizophrenia, *Journal of Formosan Medical Association*, 112, 332-337

Leoniuk, J.; Lukasiewicz, A.; Szorc, M. Z; Sackiewicz, I., Janica, J and Lebkowska, U. (2014) Doppler Ultrasound detection of preclinical changes in foot arteries in early-stage Type 2 Diabetes, *Polish Journal of Radiology*, 79:283-289 DOI: 10.12659/PJR.890486.

Leng, G. C., and Fowkes, F.C. (1992) The Edinburgh claudication questionnaire: an improved version of the WHO ROSE questionnaire for use in epidemiological surveys, *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 45 (10): 1101-9

Longmore, M., Wilkinson, I., and Torok, E. (2001) Oxford Handbook of Clinical Medicine, Oxford university press, New York.

Lundberg, J.O.; Weitzberg, E.; Gladwin, M. T. (2008) the nitrate-nitrite-nitric oxide pathway in physiology and therapeutics. *Nature. Review. Drug Discovery*, 7, 156–167.

Meldrum, D., Shouldice, C., Conroy, R., Jones, R and Forward, M. (2014) Test-retest reliability of three-dimensional gait analysis: Including a novel approach to visualising agreement of gait cycle waveforms with Bland and Altman plots, *Gait and Posture*, 39, 255

Mcdonagh, S.T.J, Wylie, L.J., Thompson, C., Vanhatalo, A. (2019) Potential benefits of dietary nitrate ingestion in healthy and clinical populations, A brief review, *European Journal of Sports Science*, 19 (1).

McGee, S.R., and Boyko, E. J. (1998), Physical examination and chronic lower extremity ischaemia; a critical review, *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 158 (12), 1357-1364.

Mitchell, J.A., Bottai, M., Park, Y., Marshall, S.J., Moore, S.c., Mathews, C.e., (2014), A prospective study of sedentary behaviour and changes in the body mass index distribution, *Medicine and Science in sports and Exercise*, 46 (12), 2244-2252.

Moneta, G.L., Yeager, R.A., Antonovic, R. (1992) Accuracy of lower extremity arterial duplex mapping, *Journal of Vascular Surgeons*, 15: 275–84.

Neil, H.A., Gatling, W., Mather, H.M., Thompson, A.V., Thorogood, M., Fowler, G.H., Hill, R.D., and Mann, J.I. (1987) The Oxford Community Diabetes Study: evidence for an increase in the prevalence of known diabetes in Great Britain, *Diabetic Medicine*, 4,539-543.

Norgren, L., Hiatt, W., Dormandy, J., Nehler, M., Harris, K., and Fowkes, F. (2007) Intersociety Consensus for the management of Peripheral Arterial Disease (TASC II) *European Journal of Vascular and Endovascular Surgery*, 33: S1-S75.

Ogbonmwan, I., Siervo, L.M., Lara, J., Mathers, J.C (2012), Effect of inorganic nitrate and beetroot juice supplementation on blood pressure: a systematic review, *Proceedings of the Nutrition Society*, 71 (OCE2), E33

Osika, J; Altman D; Ekbladh, L; Katz, Nguyen, H; Rosenfield, J; Williamson, J; Tapera, S (2010), Zimbabwe health systems 20/20 project, Abt. Associates Inc.

Park, S. L., Choi, C.Y., Ha, I.Y and Yang HY. EY (2012) Utility of Toe Brachial Index for diagnosis of Peripheral Artery Disease, *Archives of Plastic Surgery*, 39: 227-231 <http://dx.Doi.org/10.5999/aps.2012.39.3.227>.

Parirenyatwa, D, and Gwinji, G (2016), the National Health Strategy for Zimbabwe, 2016-2020

[www.unicef.org/zimbabwe/National\\_Health\\_Strategy\\_for\\_Zimbabwe\\_2016-2020](http://www.unicef.org/zimbabwe/National_Health_Strategy_for_Zimbabwe_2016-2020_FINAL.pdf) FINAL pdf.

Patana, M., (2017) management protocol for diabetes mellitus in Zimbabwe, Personal Communication.

Philpott, A., and Anderson, T. J., (2007) Reactive hyperaemia and cardiovascular risk, *Arteriosclerosis Thrombosis, Vascular Biology*, *Journal of the*

*American Heart Association*, 27: 2065-2067 <http://atv.ahajournals.org>, DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.107.149740.

Preiss, D. J. Goldberg, I. M., Lamb, E. J., Dalton, R. N and Gunn, I. R (2007). The influence of a cooked-meat meal on estimated glomerular filtration rate. *Annals of Clinical Biochemistry*, 44 (Pt 1):35-42.

Resnick, H.E., Lindsay, R.S., McDermott, M.M., Devereux, R.B., Jones, K.L., Fabsitz, R.R., Howard, B.V. (2004), Relationship of High and Low Ankle Brachial Index to All-Cause and Cardiovascular Disease Mortality. The Strong Heart Study, *Circulation*, 109:733-739.

Rooke, T.W., Hirsch, A.T., Misra, S., Sidawy, A.N., Beckman, J.A., Findeiss, L. K., Golzarian, J., Gornik, H.L., Halperin, J.L., Jaff, M.R., Moneta, G.L., Olin, J.W., Stanley, J.C., White, C.J., White, J.V., Zierler, R.E., (2011) ACCF/AHA focused update of the guideline for the management of patients with peripheral artery disease (updating the 2005 guideline): a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Journal of American College of Cardiology*, 58: 2020–45.

Rutherford, R.B.; Baker, J.D.; Ernst, C (1997), recommended standards for reports dealing lower extremity ischaemia: revised version, *Journal of Vascular Surgeons*, 26 (3): 517-538.

Sawilowsky, S.S., (2009) New effect size rules of thumb, *Journal of modern applied statistical methods*, 8 (2) 597-599, [http://digitalcommons wayne.edu/coe\\_tbf/4](http://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/coe_tbf/4)

Scanlon, C., Park, K., Mapletoft, D., Begg, L., and Burns, J. (2012) Interrater and Intrarater reliability photoplethysmography for measuring toe blood pressure and toe brachial index in people with diabetes mellitus, *Journal of Foot and Ankle Research*, 5, 13.

Sanna, I., G., Alesso, D., Mediatì, M., Cimminiello, C., Borghi, C., Fazzari, A. L., Mangrella, M. for the PANDORA study investigators, (2011) Prevalence of peripheral arterial disease in subjects with moderate cardiovascular risk: Italian results from the PANDORA study Data from PANDORA (Prevalence of peripheral Arterial disease in subjects with moderate CVD risk, with No overt vascular Diseases nor Diabetes mellitus, *Biomedical central Cardiovascular Disorders*, 11, 59, <http://www.biomedcentral.com/1471-2261/11/59>.

Stamler, J., Mendelson, M.E, Amarante, P., Smick, D., Andon, N., Davies, P.F., Cooke, J. P., Loscalzo, J. (1989) N-acetylcysteine Potentiates platelet inhibition by an endothelium-derived relaxing factor, *Circulation Research*, 65:789-795.

Seino, Y., Nanjo, K., Tajima, N., Kadowaki, T., Kashiwagi, A., Araki, E., Ito, C., Inagaki, N., Iwamoto, Y., Kasuga, M., Hanafus, T., Masakaza, H., and Ueki, K. (2010) The committee of the Japan Diabetes Society on the diagnostic criteria of diabetes mellitus, *Journal of Diabetes Investigation*, 513,450-467 DOI 10.1111/j.2040-1124.2010.0074x, 2010.

Siervo, M., Lara, J., Ogbonmwan, I., and Mathers, J.C. (2013) Inorganic Nitrate and Beetroot Juice supplementation reduces blood pressure in adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis, *Journal of Nutrition*, 143: 818-826.

Sun, N. F.; Tian, A. L.; Hu, S.Y.; and Xu, L (2013) the interventional therapy for diabetic peripheral artery disease *Biomedical Central Surgery*; 13: 32.

Sheppard, J. M., Chapman, D., and Taylor, K. L. (2011) An evaluation of strength qualities assessment method for the lower body, *Journal of Australian Strength and Conditioning* 19 (2) 4-10

Steinberg, D., Wizturn, J. L. (2010) Oxidised Low-Density Lipoproteins and atherosclerosis, *Arteriosclerosis Thrombosis and Vascular Biology*, 30: 2311-2316 Doi: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.108.179697.

Steinberg, D. (2009). LDL modification hypothesis: an update, *Journal of Lipid Research*, 50 (supplement): 5376-5381 DOI: 10.1194/jlr. R800087-JLR200.

Tapfumaneyi, C and Okello, D.O. (2014) Global atlas of medical devices-2014, [www.who.int/medical\\_devices/countries/zwe](http://www.who.int/medical_devices/countries/zwe).

Thomas, C., Jones, P.A., and Comfort, P. (2015) Reliability of the dynamic strength index in College Athletes, *International Journal of Sports Physiology and Performance*, 542-545, <http://dx.doi.org/10.1123/ijsp.2014-0255>

Type 2 diabetes in adults: management, (NG 28) NICE, (2018) [www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng28](http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng28) [accessed February 2018].

Umans, J.G and Levi, R. (1995) Nitric oxide in the regulation of blood flow and arterial pressure. *Annual Review of Physiology*; 57:771-90.

Umesh, G., Karippacheril, J.G., Magazine, R. (2016) Critical Appraisal of published literature, *Indian Journal of Anaesthesia*, 60 (9), 670-673, DOI: 10.4103/0019-5049

Vanhatalo, A., Bailey, S.J, Blackwell, J. R., Dimenna, F.J., Pavev, T.G., Wilkerson, D.P., Benjamin, N., Winyard, P.G and Jones, A.M (2010) Acute and chronic effects of dietary nitrate supplementation on blood pressure and physiological responses to moderate-intensity and incremental exercise. *American Journal of Physiology-Regulatory Integrative Comparative Physiology*, 299: R1121-31.

Vanhatalo, A., Fulford, J., Bailey, S. J., Blackwell, J. R., Winyard, P., Jones, A. M. (2011) Dietary nitrate reduces muscle metabolic perturbation and improves exercise tolerance in hypoxia, *Journal of Physiology*, 589 (22) 5517-5520.

Varaki, E.S., Gargiulo, G.D., Penkala, S., and Breen, P.P. () Peripheral vascular disease assessment in the lower limb: a review of current and emerging non-invasive diagnostic methods, *BioMedical Engineering OnLine* (2018) 17: 61

<https://doi.org/10.1186/s12938-018-0494-4>

Vauhkonen, I., Niskanen, L., Knip, M., Ilonen, J., Vanninen, E., Kaunulainen, S., Uusitupa, M., Laakso, M.I., (2000), Impaired Insulin secretion in non-diabetic offspring of probands with latent autoimmune diabetes mellitus in adults, *Diabetologia*, 43 (1):69-78

Webb, A.J., Patel, N., Loukogeorgakis, S., Okorie, M., Aboud, Z., Misras, S., Rashid, R., Miall, P., Deanfield, J., and Benjamin, N. (2008) Acute blood pressure lowering Vasoprotective and antiplatelet properties of dietary nitrate via bioconversion to nitrite. *Hypertension*, 51, 784-790.

Webb, N.M., Shovelson, R. J., and Haertel, D.H. (2006), Reliability coefficients and Generalisability theory, *Handbook of statistics*, 26 DOI: 10.1016/50169-7161(06)26004-8.

Wild, C. (1997), the Wilcoxon Rank Sum Test,

<https://www.stat.Auckland.ac.nz/wild/chanceEnc/chlo.wilcoxon.pdf>.

Yoshimura, T., Suzuki, E., Egawa, K., Nishio, Y., Maegawa, H., Morokawa, S., Inubushi, T., Hisatomi, A., Fujimoto, K., and Kashiwayi, A. (2006), Low blood flow estimates in lower leg arteries predict cardiovascular events in Japanese patients with Type 2 Diabetes with normal Ankle Brachial indexes, *Diabetes Care*, 29:1884-1890.

Zaiontz, C. (2013-170), [www.realstatitits.com](http://www.realstatitits.com).

Zhang, T., Xia, L-H., Bian, Y-Y., Feng, B., Wang, C., Meng, F., Zhang, Y., and Chen, M. (2013) Blood flow of the Acral finger arterioles in patients with type 2 Diabetes by quality Doppler profiles, *Cell Biochemistry and Biophysics*, 67 (2), 717-25.

Zeng, G., Nystrom, F.H., Ravichandran, L.V., Cong, L.N., Kirby, M., Mostowiski, H., Quon, M.J. (2000) Roles of the insulin receptor, P 13-kinase and Akt in Insulin

Signaling pathways related to the production of nitric oxide in human vascular endothelial cells, *Circulation*. 101;1539-1545

[www.heartland.com](http://www.heartland.com) {accessed 12/2016}